

Owner's Manual

2016 Audi Q3

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

In the Owner's Manual, you will also find the Operating Manual for your Infotainment system and the vehicle maintenance schedule.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

162.561.8U0.21

Table of contents

Owner's Literature 5

About this Owner's Manual 6

Operation 8
Cockpit overview 8
Controls at a glance 8

Instruments and indicator lights 10
Instruments 10
Indicator lights 11

Driver information system 20
Overview 20
Operation 21
On-board computer 22
Time/date display 22
Odometer 23
Door, hood or luggage compartment lid is open 23
Efficiency program 23
Service interval display 25
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 25
Electronic speed limiter 26

Opening and closing 27
Central locking 27
Luggage compartment lid 33
Child safety lock 35
Power Windows 36
Panorama roof 37

Lights and Vision 39
Exterior lighting 39
Interior lighting 42
Vision 43
Windshield wipers 45
Digital compass 47

Seats and storage 49
General information 49
Front seats 50
Head restraints 51
Ashtray 53
Cigarette lighter 53
Sockets 53
Storage 54
Roof rack 57
Luggage compartment 58

Warm and cold 62
Climate control system 62

Driving 67
Steering 67
Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with an ignition lock) 67
Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with a convenience key) 69
Driver messages 71
Electromechanical parking brake 71
Speed warning system 74
Cruise control system 74

Audi side assist 76
Side assist 76

Audi drive select 80
Drive settings 80

Automatic transmission 82
tiptronic 82

Parking systems 88
General information 88
Rear parking system 88
Parking system plus 89
Rearview camera 90
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 93
Error messages 93
Trailer hitch 94

Safety 95
Driving safety 95
Basics 95
Correct passenger seating positions 96
Pedal area 99
Storing cargo correctly 100
Reporting Safety Defects 102

Safety belts 104
General information 104
Why use safety belts? 105

Safety belts 107
Belt tensioners 110

Airbag system 112
Important information 112
Front airbags 116
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 122
Side airbags 126
Side curtain airbags 129

Child safety 132
Important information 132
Child seats 137
Securing child seats 141
LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children) 144
Additional information 149

Driver messages 150
Intelligent Technology 150
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 150
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 151
Brakes 154
Electromechanical steering 156
All wheel drive (quattro) 156
Energy management 157

Driving and the environment 159
Breaking in 159
Avoid damaging the vehicle 159
Catalytic converter 159
Shutting down vehicle 160
Economical and environmentally-friendly driving 160
Driving offroad 162

Trailer mode 164
Driving with a trailer 164
Trailer mode notes 166

Operating instructions 168
Care and cleaning 168
General information 168
Car washes 168
Cleaning and care information 169

Fuel and Refueling 173
Gasoline 173
Refueling 174

Checking and Filling 177
Hood 177
Engine compartment 179
Engine oil 179
Cooling system 183
Brake fluid 186
Battery 187
Windshield washer system 190

Wheels 191
Wheels and Tires 191
Tire pressure monitoring system 208

Troubleshooting 211
Emergency assistance 211
General information 211
Vehicle tool kit 211
Folding chocks 212
Removing the subwoofer 212
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) 212
Replacing wheels 213

Fuses and bulbs 219
Fuses 219
Bulbs 221

Emergency situations 223
General 223
Starting by pushing or towing 223
Starting with jumper cables 223
Use of jumper cables 224
Towing with a tow truck 225
Raising the vehicle 227

Technical Data 229
Technical data 229
Vehicle identification 229
Weights 229
Dimensions 230

162.561.8U0.21

Capacities 230
Gasoline engines 231

Consumer information 232
Warranty coverages 232
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 232
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 232
Maintenance 232
Accessories and technical changes 234
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems 235

Index 236

In addition to this Owner's Manual, your Audi comes with the

– MMI Operating Instructions
– Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

MMI Operating Instructions

contain detailed description of the Audi Multi Media Interface (MMI) including the navigation system, the sound system and the handheld phone.

The Warranty & Maintenance booklet

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly and contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi. Always have the booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer for service. Your Audi Service Advisor will record each scheduled service and can answer any questions you may have regarding how to maintain your vehicle.

In Canada,

the vehicle literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Audi Canada.
Client Assistance
Assistance a la Clientele
777 Bayly Street, West,
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

If you sell your Audi

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi dealer.

It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise.

162.561.8U0.21

This manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

There is a **Table of Contents** at the beginning of this owner's manual that lists all of the topics covered in this book in the order that they appear. There is also an alphabetical **Index** at the end of this owner's manual.

All **directions,** such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

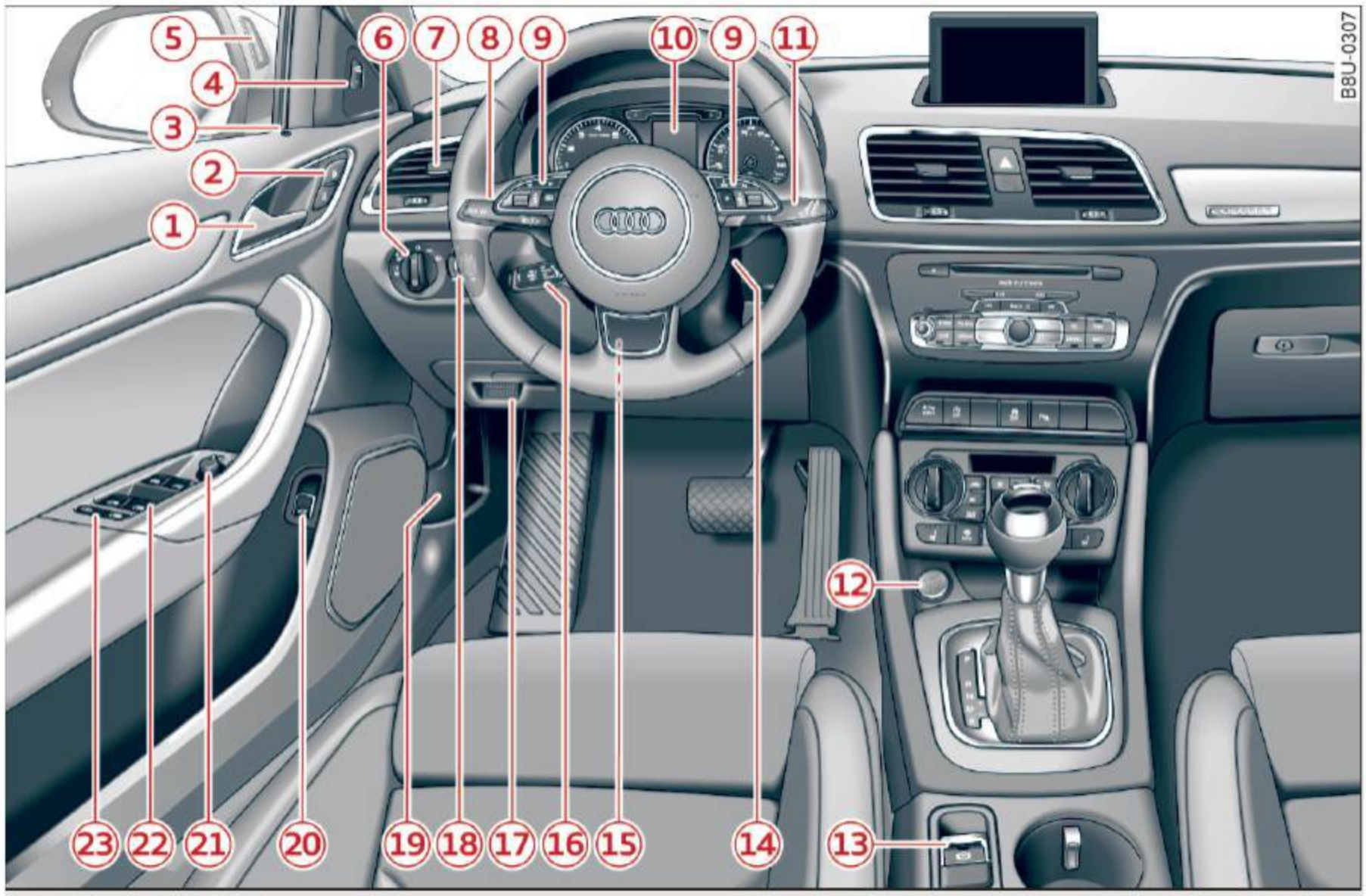


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

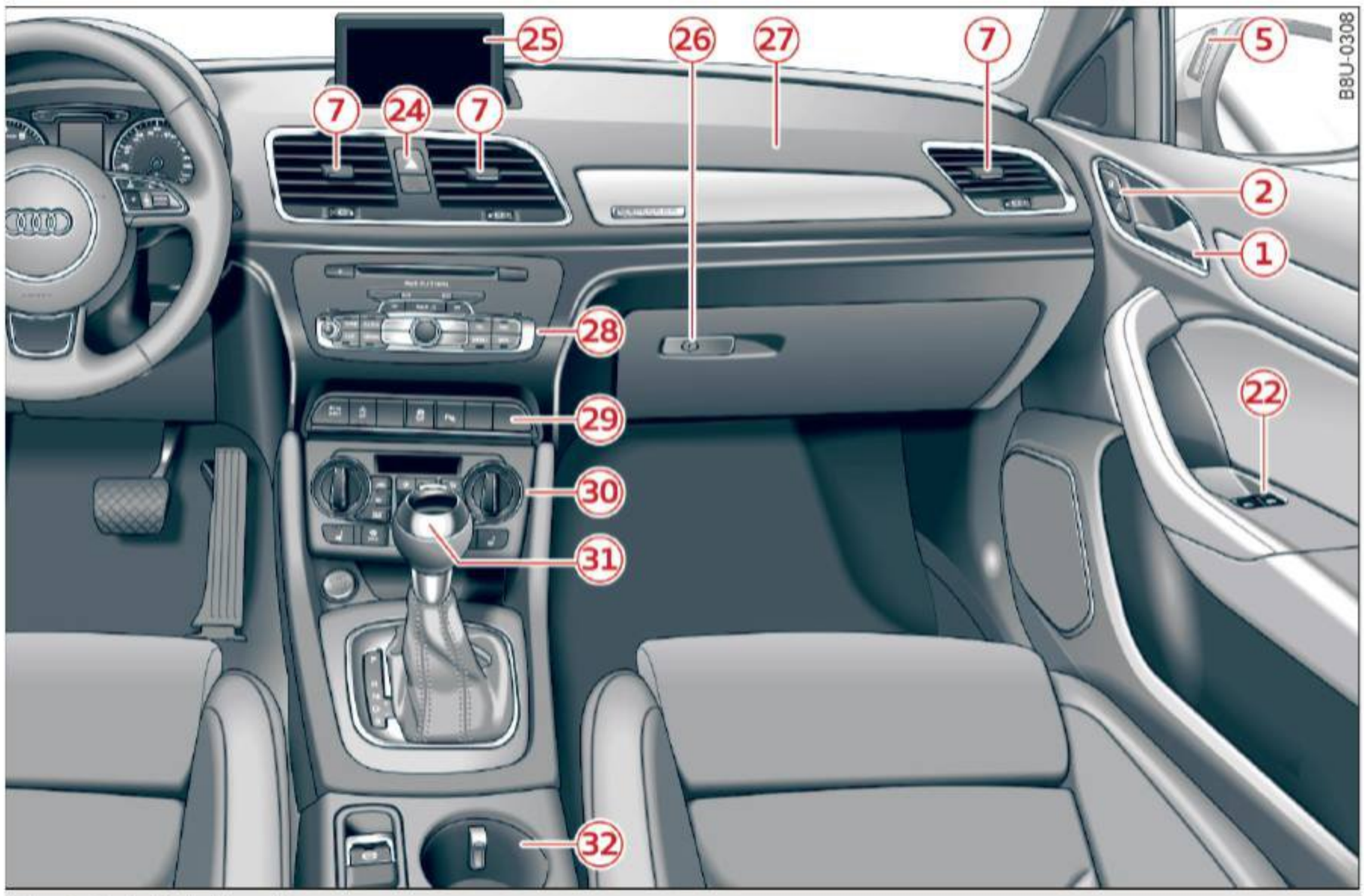


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle
② Central locking switch 31
③ Central locking LED 27
④ Side assist button 76
⑤ Side assist display 76
⑥ Light switch 39
⑦ Air vents with thumbwheel
⑧ Lever for turn signal and high beams 40
⑨ Multifunction steering wheel with:
– Horn
– Driver's airbag 116
– Driver information system controls 20
– Audio, telephone, navigation and voice recognition controls
– Programmable steering wheel button 22
– Shift paddles for tiptronic operation 85
⑩ Instrument cluster 10
⑪ Windshield washer system lever . 45
⑫ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 69
⑬ Parking brake button 71
⑭ Starting the engine when there is a malfunction or ignition lock 70
⑮ Steering wheel adjustment 67
⑯ Cruise control lever 74
⑰ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) 25
⑱ Instrument illumination 43
⑲ Hood release 177
⑳ Automatic luggage compartment lid 33
㉑ Power exterior mirror adjustment 43
㉒ Power windows 36
㉓ Child safety lock 36
㉔ Buttons/indicator lights for:
– Emergency flashers 42
– PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
㉕ Infotainment system display (does not fold away)
㉖ Glove compartment 55
㉗ Front passenger's airbag 116
㉘ Infotainment system control panel
㉙ Buttons/indicator lights for:
– Drive select 80
– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 152
– Parking system 88
– Hill descent assist 153
㉚ Climate control system 64
㉛ Automatic transmission selector lever 82
㉜ Center console with:
– Cup holder 54
– Cigarette lighter 53
– Socket 53

Tips

– Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.
– The image in the instrument cluster display depends on the vehicle equipment. A maximum of two versions will be pictured in this Owner's Manual.
– A separate operating manual describes how to operate the Infotainment system.

162.561.8U0.21

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① SET button 22
② Tachometer 11
③ Engine coolant temperature gauge . . 10
④ Turn signal indicator lights 40
⑤ Display with:
– Driver information system 20
– Indicator lights 11
– Fuel level* 11
– Odometer 23
⑥ Tachometer
⑦ Fuel level 11
⑧ Trip odometer reset button 23

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the dials reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the headlights on at the appropriate time.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature indicator ② ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only operates when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If the needle is at the bottom of the gauge, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached operating temperature when the needle moves into the center of the gauge under normal driving conditions. The needle may move farther to the right on the gauge with heavier engine load at high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern as long as the indicator light in the instrument cluster does not turn on. If the needle is far over on the right side of the gauge and the indicator light turns on, then the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 14*. ▶

WARNING

– Always observe the warning in ⇨ *page 177*, before opening the hood and checking the engine coolant level.
– Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first so that you cannot hear or see any steam or engine coolant.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

You should shift to the next lowest gear when the engine speed is below 1500 RPM. The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching this zone, you should shift into the next highest gear, select the D selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer (2) ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short time or there is a risk of engine damage. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Fuel level

The fuel level indicator only operates when the ignition is switched on. The ⇨ *page 17* turns on if the reserve quantity of fuel is reached.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 230*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause the engine to misfire. Non-combusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions ⇨ ⚠.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages in the display can be covered by other displays. Displaying driver messages again ⇨ *page 21, Operating using the windshield wiper lever*, ⇨ *page 21, Operating using the multifunction steering wheel*.

Some indicator lights are shown in multiple colors in the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

– Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.
– Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇨ *page 42*.

– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the hood ⇨ *page 177*.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly to check the function of that system when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights

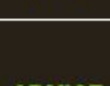
BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
(!)	**Canada models:** Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
PARK	**USA models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
(P)	**Canada models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
	Safety belts ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine cooling system ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 15*
	Battery ⇨ *page 15*
	Electromechanical power steering ✓ ⇨ *page 156*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 86*
	Steering column lock ⇨ *page 16*

Yellow indicator lights

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ESC OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 16*
ABS	**USA models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
(ABS)	**Canada models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
	Worn brake pads ⇨ *page 16*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
(!)	Tire pressure monitoring system* ✓ ⇨ *page 208*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system* ⇨ *page 208*
EPC	Electronic power control ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Malfunction indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 17*
MIN	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 17*
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 17*
	Battery ⇨ *page 15*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 17*

	Windshield washer fluid level ⇨ *page 18*
	Electromechanical power steering ⇨ *page 156*
	Ignition lock ⇨ *page 18*
	Steering column lock ⇨ *page 16*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 71*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
	Defective light bulb warning ⇨ *page 18*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 18*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 18*
	Light-/rain sensor ⇨ *page 18*
	Adaptive dampers* ⇨ *page 18*
	**USA models:** Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 74*
	**Canada models:** Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 74*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 40*
	Trailer turn signal assembly ⇨ *page 19*
	**USA models:** Cruise control ⇨ *page 74*
	**Canada models:** Cruise control ⇨ *page 74*
	Hill descent control ⇨ *page 153*

	High beam ⇨ *page 40*
	High beam assist* ⇨ *page 40*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 70*
	Open door ⇨ *page 23*
	Open hood ⇨ *page 23*
	Open rear lid ⇨ *page 23*

BRAKE / (!) Brake system

If the indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (!) (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility, if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (!) (Canada models) Brake: Malfunction! Please park vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models)/ (ABS) (Canada models), the ESP indicator light and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (!) (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, the ABS, ESP and braking distribution are not working ⇨ ⚠.

Stop the car and get professional assistance ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (!) (Canada models) Parking brake: System fault! See owner's manual.

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. After releasing the parking brake, carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If you cannot release the parking brake, seek professional assistance. ▶

– If the indicator light and the message appear **while driving**, the emergency braking function may not be available. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Seek professional assistance.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light appear together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇨ *page 16*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

WARNING

– Always observe the warnings in ⇨ *page 177*, before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid.
– Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard. Stop the car and get professional assistance.
– If the BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Stop the car and get professional assistance.
– If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake is released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected.
– Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident.

PARK/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

The warning/indicator light monitors the electromechanical parking brake.

If the indicator light PARK (USA models) /Ⓟ (Canada models) turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) Press brake pedal to release parking brake.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the button Ⓟ at the same time or start driving with starting assist ⇨ *page 72, Starting from a stop*.

Parking brake: System fault! See owner´s manual.

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a parking brake malfunction. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

More information on the parking brake ⇨ *page 71*.

Cooling system

Turn off engine and check coolant level.

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 183*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 183*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature! Let engine run with vehicle stationary.

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 177*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on - this increases the risk of engine damage.

Engine oil pressure

The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low-oil-pressure indication is likely to inflict severe damage to the engine.

Turn off engine! Oil pressure is too low.

Turn off the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 181*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 181*. Only continue driving if the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility.

Tips

– **The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
– **The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning . By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage.**

Battery

The warning/indicator light illuminates when you switch on the ignition and must go out after the engine has started.

Alternator fault: Battery is not being charged.

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the generator or vehicle electrical system.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. Seek professional assistance if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery charge: Battery will be charged while driving.

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there may be limited starting ability.

If this message turns off after a little while, the battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop correct the malfunction.

Safety belts

This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an acoustic warning (gong) will also sound.

Tips

For more Information ⇨ *page 104, Safety belt warning light*.

Steering column lock

Steering fault! Do not drive vehicle!

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is an electronic steering column lock malfunction. You cannot switch the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. Seek professional assistance.

Steering lock: System fault! Please contact dealer.

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is an electronic steering column lock malfunction.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed in the event of a malfunction in the electronic steering column lock because it cannot be steered due to the locked steering. If it is towed with the steering locked, there is the risk of an accident.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was restricted or switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 151*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): Fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and the message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning.

This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, refer to ⇨ *page 151*.

Safety systems

The indicator light monitors the safety systems (e.g. airbags, pretensioners) and illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch the ignition on.

If the indicator light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to blink, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this also means there is a malfunction.

WARNING

If you have a malfunction in the safety systems, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the safety systems may not work properly in an accident.

Worn brake pads

Brake pads!

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on ▶

together with the warning light BRAKE. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

– If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[1] with the message **Brake pads!** comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary.

EPC Electronic power control

This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you switch the ignition on as a function check.

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified repair facility.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol lights up when the ignition is switched on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at a constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 175*.

For more information ⇨ *page 25*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to vehicles: with engine speed limitation

Do not exceed max. engine speed of XXXX rpm

The symbol illuminates when there is an engine control malfunction. The EPC indicator light in the instrument cluster also illuminates. The engine speed is limited to the speed displayed in the driver information system. Keep in mind that the engine speed will not exceed the value displayed in the driver information system, for example when downshifting.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil level

Check oil level.

If the indicator light and the message appear, add engine oil immediately ⇨ *page 179*.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: System fault!

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇨ *page 181*.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 1.8 - 2.2 gallons (7.0 - 8.5 liters) of fuel left in the tank. Time to refuel ⇨ *page 174*.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Contact dealer.

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the tank system. ▶

1) BRAKE: USA models only

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Windshield washer fluid level

Please refill washer fluid.

If the symbol illuminates, add windshield washer fluid to the windshield washer system.

Engine start system

Engine start system: Malfunction! Please contact dealer.

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system: Malfunction. Please contact dealer.

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Defective light bulb warning

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb.

Vehicle lights: System fault!

If the message appears, there is a malfunction in the headlights or light switch.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- Light bulbs are pressurized and could explode while they are being changed causing serious personal injury.
- Work with due care when handling the high-voltage section of gas discharge (xenon) lights*. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

Tips

Have the bulb replaced or the connection repaired by your authorized Audi Service department.

Headlight range control

Headlight range control: System fault!

If the symbol illuminates, the dynamic headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your authorized Audi dealer.

Audi Adaptive Light

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive light

Audi adaptive light: System fault!

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the adaptive light system. The headlights still function.

Go to an authorized dealership to have the headlights or the control unit for the adaptive light repaired.

Light/rain sensor

Applies to vehicles: with light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/wipers: System fault!

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the light/rain sensor is not functioning correctly.

For safety reasons the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Contact your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to have the problem corrected.

Adaptive dampers

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select and adaptive dampers

Suspension: System fault!

There is an adaptive damper malfunction. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

⇦ ⇨ Turn signals

Whenever you use the left ⇦ or the right ⇨ turn signal, the indicator light blinks. When you use the emergency flashers, both indicator lights flash.

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will blink twice as fast as normal. Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For more information on the turn signals, see ⇨ *page 40*.

⇦¹⇨ Trailer turn signal assembly

The indicator light also blinks if the turn signal is operated when towing a trailer.

The indicator light ⇦¹⇨ blinks when the turn signal is used, if a trailer has been properly connected to the vehicle.

If one of the turn signal bulbs on the trailer is burned out or defective, the indicator light will not blink when you use the turn signals.

Tips

For vehicles with a trailer hitch that was installed later according to factory specifications, the trailer turn signal assembly is actuated.

162.561.8U0.21

Driver information system

Overview



Fig. 4 Display on vehicles with driver information system* and multifunction steering wheel*

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the driver information system is controlled with either the buttons on the windshield wiper lever* ⇨ *page 21* or with the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 21*.

On vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel, the information Ⓑ is shown in tabs Ⓐ. The tabs are visible as soon as you press a button on the multifunction steering wheel*.

The instrument cluster display provides information about:

Ⓑ	Time and date ⇨ *page 22*
	Digital speedometer
	On-board computer ⇨ *page 22*
	Efficiency program ⇨ *page 23*
	Reduced display*
	Indicator lights and messages ⇨ *page 11*
	Warning when a door, the hood or the luggage compartment lid is open ⇨ *page 23*
	Service interval display ⇨ *page 25*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 74*
	Parking system* ⇨ *page 88*
	Audio*
	Telephone*
	Navigation*
Ⓒ	Odometer and trip odometer ⇨ *page 23*
Ⓓ	Outside temperature, selector lever position*, headlight assist* indicator light

Auto Check Control

Some functions and vehicle components are scanned for their operating status when you switch the ignition on and while you are driving. Malfunctions or required service procedures are signaled audibly and indicated by red and yellow illuminated symbols and reminders in the display.

WARNING

- Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 41 °F (+5 °C).
- Always remember, even if the “snowflake” symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.
- Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.

Tips

If the vehicle is stationary, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

Operation

Operating using the windshield wiper lever

Applies to vehicles: without multifunction steering wheel

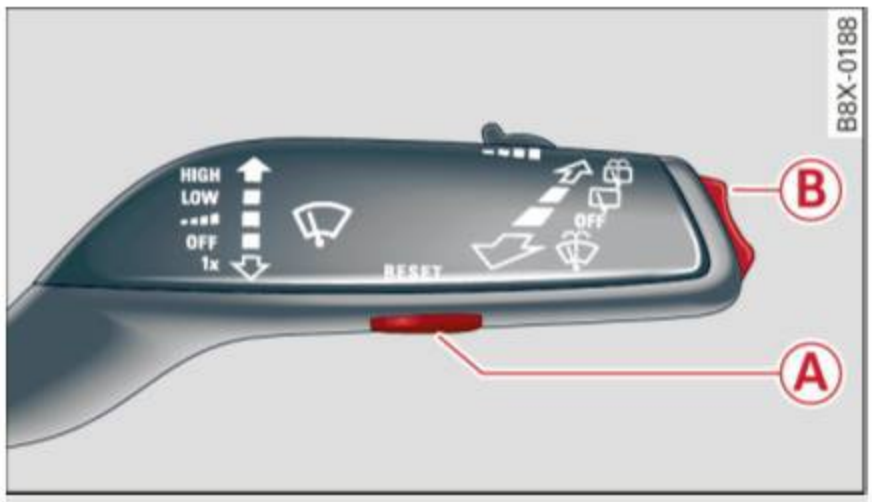


Fig. 5 Windshield wiper lever: operating the driver information system

Operating

- ▸ Switch the ignition on. The last select function is displayed.
- ▸ To switch between the on-board computer 1, 2, the efficiency program or, for example, the cruise control system, press the RESET button Ⓐ.
- ▸ To access additional information below or above, press the button ② down or up.

Recalling indicator lights and messages

- ▸ Press the RESET button Ⓐ.

Resetting values to zero

- ▸ Select a value in the desired trip computer or in the efficiency program.
- ▸ Press and hold the RESET button Ⓐ for at least one second. All values in the selected on-board computer or in the efficiency program are reset to zero.

Operating using the multifunction steering wheel

Applies to vehicles: with multifunction steering wheel

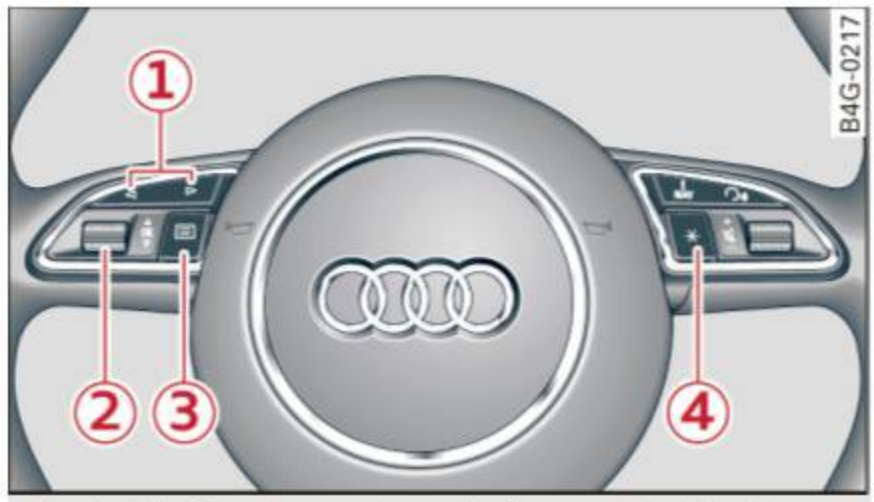


Fig. 6 Multifunction steering wheel: operating the driver information system



Fig. 7 Display: Car functions menu

The tab Ⓐ ⇨ *page 20, fig. 4* is displayed once you press a button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Operating

- ▸ Switch the ignition on. The last select function is displayed.
- ▸ To switch between the tabs, press the button ① to the left or right ⇨ *fig. 6*.
- ▸ To access additional information below or above, turn the thumbwheel ② down or up.
- ▸ To confirm a selection, press the thumbwheel ②.

Opening the Car functions

- ▸ Select the first tab with the button ①.
- ▸ Press the button ③. The **Car functions** menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 7*.
- ▸ To select a menu item, turn and press the thumbwheel ②.
- ▸ To select a function programmed to a steering wheel button, press the button ④. ▶

Resetting values to zero

- ▸ In the **Car functions** menu, select **On-board computer** or **Efficiency program**.
- ▸ Select a value in the desired trip computer or in the efficiency program.
- ▸ To reset the values in a memory, press and hold the thumbwheel ② for one second.

Assigning a function to a programmable steering wheel button

- ▸ Select the CAR button > **(Car) systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button**.

Recalling indicator lights and messages

- ▸ Select the ! tab.

The ! tab is only visible when there is at least one indicator light or message displayed. Other folders are only visible if the applicable system is switched on.

On-board computer



Fig. 8 Display: on-board computer memory level 1

Operating with the windshield wiper lever*

- ▸ Press the RESET button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 21, fig. 5* repeatedly until the on-board computer appears in the display.
- ▸ To access additional content, press the button Ⓑ.

Operating with the multifunction steering wheel*

- ▸ Open Car functions and select the **On-board computer** menu item ⇨ *page 21*.
- ▸ To access additional content, turn the thumbwheel ② ⇨ *page 21, fig. 6*.

You can identify which on-board computer is currently being shown in the display based on the small 1 or 2.

The on-board computer 1 ⇨ *fig. 8* is a short-term memory. It collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory (on-board computer 2) is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

You can call up the following information consecutively in on-board computer 1 or 2:

– Date
– Range
– Travel time
– Average consumption
– Average speed
– Distance
– Current fuel consumption

Tips

– Disconnecting the battery causes all the memory data to be erased.
– Information on the efficiency program ⇨ *page 23*.

Time/date display



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: time and date

You can switch between the quartz clock or the GPS controlled clock* depending on the vehicle ▸

equipment. For more information, refer to your MMI Operating Manual.

Tips

- When you switch off the ignition or open the driver's door, the time, date*, odometer and temperature are displayed for an additional 30 seconds.
- You can access the display with the SET button when the ignition is switched off.

Odometer



Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: odometer

Odometer/trip odometer

The distance driven is shown in miles “mi” or kilometers “km”. The units of measurement (kilometers/miles) can be changed in the Infotainment system. For more information, refer to your MMI Operating Manual.

Ⓐ - The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Ⓑ - The trip odometer shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since the last time the trip odometer was reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The last digit indicates 1/10 miles or 100 meter increments.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the O.O reset button --⇨ *page 10, fig. 3*.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Door, hood or luggage compartment lid is open

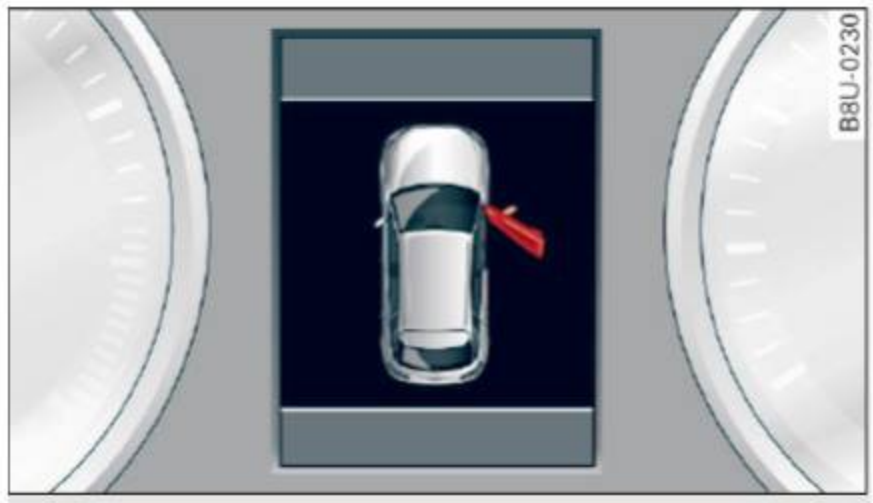


Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: display when front passenger's door is open

When the ignition is switched on, the display appears if at least *one* door or the hood/luggage compartment lid was not closed correctly. The instrument cluster display will show *which* doors or lids were not closed correctly.

Efficiency program

Overview

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: efficiency program

Operating with the windshield wiper lever*

▸ Press the RESET button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 21, fig. 5* repeatedly until the efficiency program appears in the display.

Operating with the multifunction steering wheel*

▸ Open car functions and select the **Efficiency program** menu item ⇨ *page 21*.

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It evaluates driving information in reference to fuel consumption and shows other equipment ▶

influencing consumption ⇨ *page 24*. Fuel economy messages ⇨ *page 24* provide tips for efficient driving.

The efficiency program receives data about the distance and fuel consumption from the on-board computer 1. If the data in the efficiency program is deleted ⇨ *page 21*/⇨ *page 22*, the values in the on-board computer 1 are also reset.

Other equipment

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program

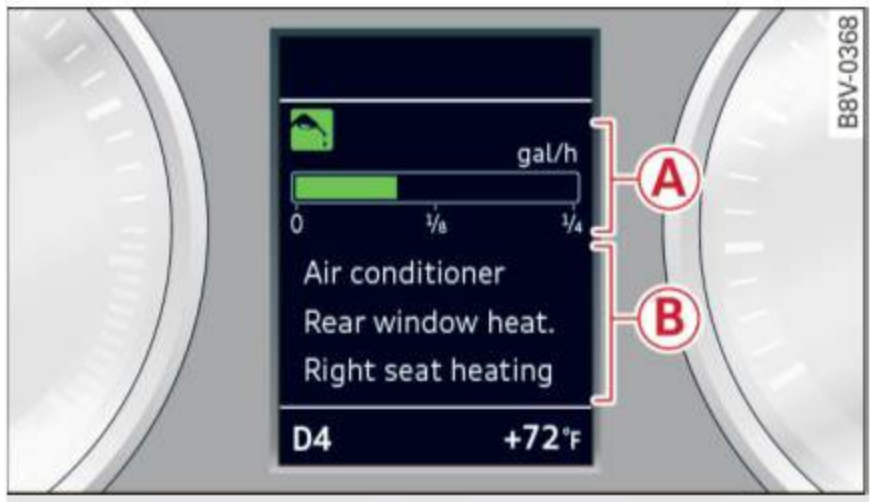


Fig. 13 Instrument cluster: other consumers

Requirement: The efficiency program must be open ⇨ *page 23*.

- ▸ Operating with the windshield wiper lever*: press the button (B) ⇨ *page 21, fig. 5* repeatedly, until the other equipment affecting consumption appears in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 13*.
- ▸ Operating with the multifunction steering wheel*: keep turning the thumbwheel (2) ⇨ *page 21, fig. 6* until the other equipment affecting consumption appears in the display.

Other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption is listed in the efficiency program. The display shows up to three other items of equipment consuming fuel (B) ⇨ *fig. 13*. The equipment using the most fuel is listed first. If more than three items using fuel are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most fuel is displayed.

A scale (A) also shows the current total consumption of all other consumers.

Fuel economy messages

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program



Fig. 14 Instrument cluster: example of economy tip

Fuel economy messages are displayed when fuel consumption is increased by certain conditions. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption. The messages appear automatically and are only displayed in the efficiency program. The fuel economy messages turn off automatically after a certain period of time.

- ▸ To turn an economy tip off immediately after it appears, press any button on the windshield wiper lever*/multifunction steering wheel*.

Tips

- – Once you have turned an economy tip off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
- – The economy tips are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.



Fig. 15 Instrument cluster: example of a service interval display

The service interval display works in two stages:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder**: after a certain distance is driven, a message appears in the instrument cluster display every time the ignition is switched on ⇨ *fig. 15*. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due**: if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Car menu. To do this, select: the CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

Your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the display, select: CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals** > turn the control knob down to **Reset oil change interval** and press the control knob.

Note

- Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
- Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
- Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected. If the vehicle is not driven for a long period of time, check the maintenance schedule so that you can follow the maintenance intervals.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 26, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 175*.

On-Board Diagnostics

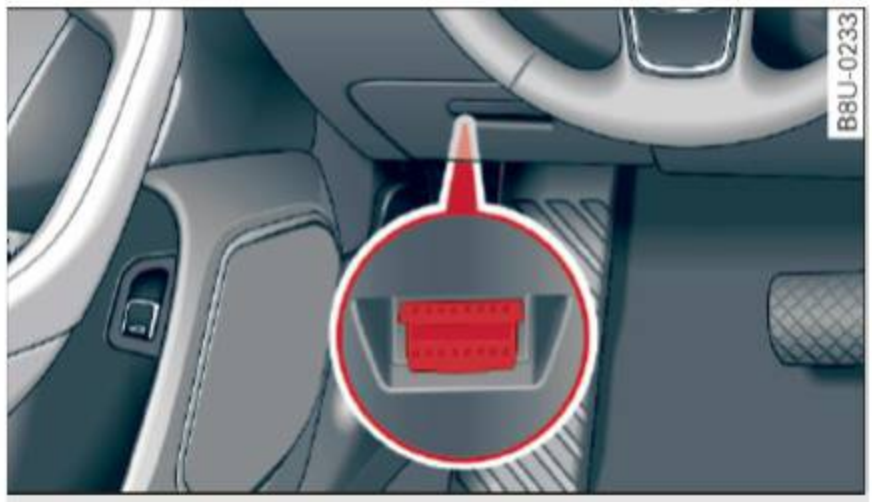


Fig. 16 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refueling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed (only vehicles with gasoline engine) ⇨ *page 175*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 16*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 191*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Opening and closing

Central locking

General description

The power locking system locks or unlocks all doors and the rear lid simultaneously.

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following choices:

– Remote master key ⇨ *page 29*,
– Sensors in the front door handle on vehicles with convenience key* ⇨ *page 30*,
– Power locking switch inside ⇨ *page 31*, oder
– Lock cylinder at the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*.

Automatic locking

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).

The car is unlocked again once the ignition key is removed. In addition, the vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the power locking system switch or at one of the door levers is actuated.

Additionally, in the event of a crash with airbag deployment the doors are automatically unlocked to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective unlocking

When you lock the vehicle, the power locking system will lock the doors and the rear lid. When unlocking, you can set in the radio or MMI* whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked ⇨ *page 31*.

Anti-theft alarm warning system

If the anti-theft alarm warning system detects a break-in into the vehicle, acoustic and visual warning signals are triggered.

The anti-theft alarm system turns on automatically when you lock the vehicle. It deactivates when unlocking using the remote control key or by touching the sensor on the door handle (convenience key).

To switch the alarm off, press the button on the remote control key or convenience key or switch the ignition on. The alarm also stops automatically after a certain amount of time.

You can also trigger the alarm by pressing the PANIC button on your remote-control key. This will alert other people in case of emergency. Press the **PANIC** button again to turn off the alarm.

Turn signals

When you unlock the vehicle, the turn signals flash twice, when you lock it once. If they do not flash, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is not locked, the ignition is still switched on or the selector lever is not in position P.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

In the following cases there are safeguards to prevent you from locking your remote master key in the vehicle:

– The vehicle does not lock with the central locking switch if the driver's door is open ⇨ *page 31*.
– On vehicles with convenience key*, if the most recently used master key is in the luggage compartment, the rear lid is automatically unlocked again after it is closed.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote master key or convenience key* until all doors and the rear lid are closed. In this way you avoid locking yourself out accidentally.

WARNING

– When you leave the vehicle, always remove the ignition key and take it with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the front doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key. ▶

162.561.8U0.21

Tips

- In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should malfunction, you can lock the driver's door using the ignition key ⇨ *page 32*.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇨ *page 176*.
- You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe.
- If the LED in the upper edge of the driver's door panel comes on for about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, there is a malfunction in the power locking or the anti-theft warning system. Have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealership or qualified repair facility.

Key set

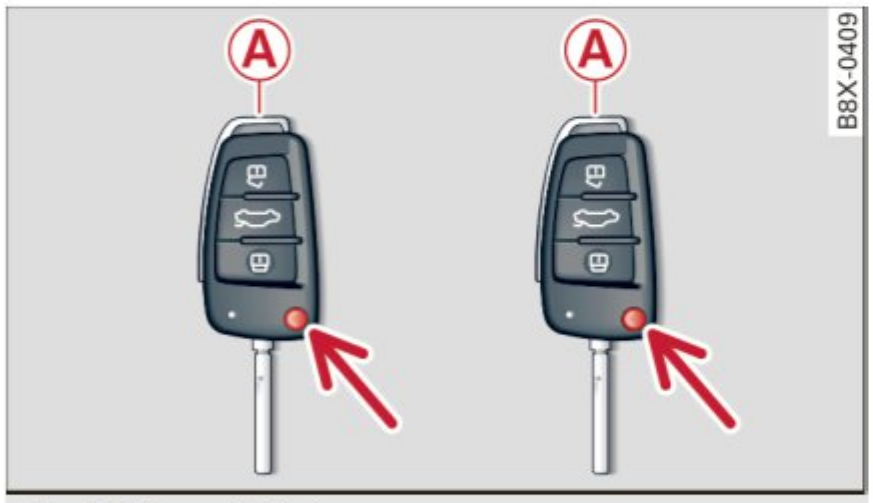


Fig. 17 Your vehicle key set

The key set contains two remote control keys or convenience keys*. To fold the key out or in, press the release button ⇨ *fig. 17* -arrow-.

Ⓐ Remote control key or convenience key*

The convenience key is a vehicle remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 30, Locking and unlocking with convenience key* and ⇨ *page 69, Starting the engine*.

With the remote control key, you can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally and start the engine.

Key replacement

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the instrument cluster display. It will show you this when you adjust the time ⇨ *page 22*. For example, the display **1/2** means you are using vehicle key number one out of two keys total assigned to the vehicle. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle.
- Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows etc. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury.
- Do not remove the key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Otherwise the steering column lock could suddenly engage - causing the risk of an accident.

Tips

- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. a cell phone, radio equipment).
- For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from authorized Audi dealer.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 235*.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

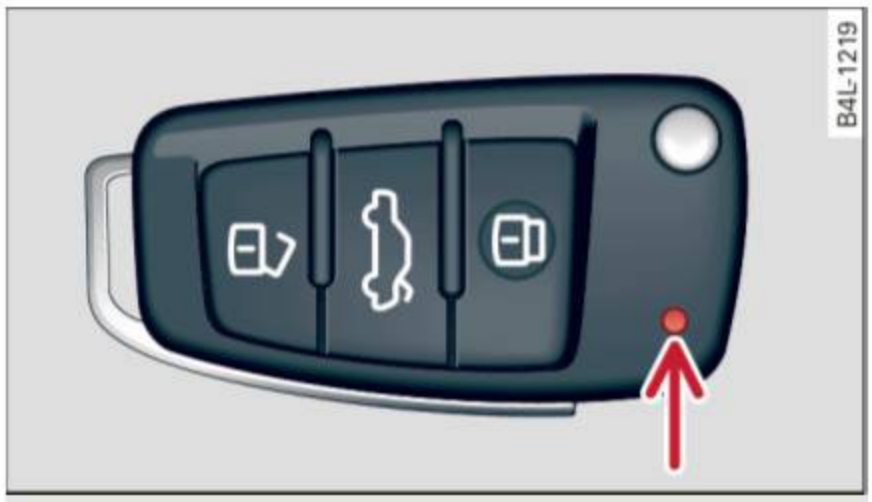


Fig. 18 Remote control key: LED

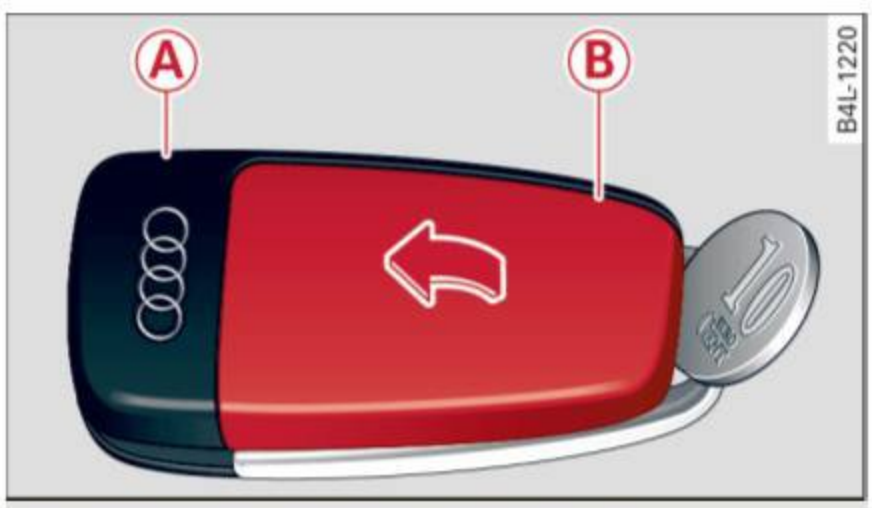


Fig. 19 Remote control key: opening the cover

LED in the remote control key

The LED ⇨ *fig. 18* informs you of the remote control key function.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button, the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The message **Please change key battery** can also appear in the instrument cluster display. Replace the battery.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- Pry the cover Ⓑ off of the key Ⓐ using a coin ⇨ *fig. 19*.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" facing up.
- Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.

We recommend having the battery replaced by your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

Dead batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Remote control key synchronization

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked/locked by the remote control, you can synchronize the remote control key.

- Press the remote control key button 🔒.
- Insert the key in the driver's door lock within 30 seconds.
- Press the 🔓 button or 🔒 button.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the remote control



Fig. 20 Remote master key: function buttons

- Press button Ⓐ 🔓 to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 20*.
- Press button Ⓑ 🔒 to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.
- Press button Ⓒ 🚗 briefly to unlock the rear lid.
- Press button Ⓒ 🚗 for at least one second to open the rear lid.
- Press button Ⓓ PANIC to trigger the alarm. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers turn on.
- Press button Ⓓ PANIC again to turn off the alarm.

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door or the rear lid is opened within 30 seconds, the vehicle locks itself again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time. This does not apply when you push the Ⓒ button for at least one second.

It depends on the settings in the radio or MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or only certain doors ⇨ *page 31*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Tips

– In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
– Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button 🔓.
– Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.
– Additional remote control key functions ⇨ *page 37*.

Locking and unlocking with convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

The doors and the rear lid can be unlocked and locked without operating the master key.

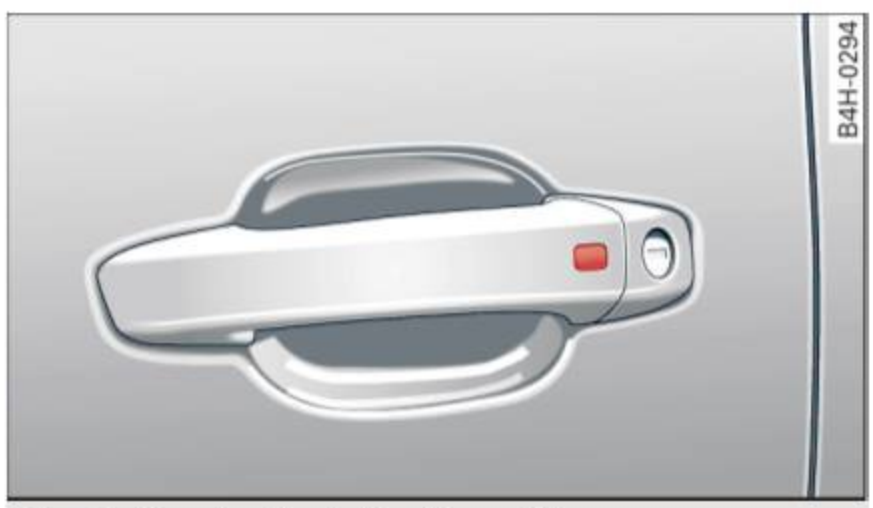


Fig. 21 Door handle: locking the vehicle

Unlocking vehicle

- ▸ Take hold of the door handle. The door is unlocked automatically.
- ▸ Pull the handle to open the door.
- ▸ To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 33*.

Locking vehicle

- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P position, otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- ▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 21*, ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*. Do not reach inside the door handle.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked only at the front doors. The remote control key cannot be more than 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your brief case.

If you grip the door handle while locking, this can adversely affect the locking function.

It is not possible to re-open the door for a brief period directly after closing it. This allows you to ensure that the doors are properly locked.

It depends on the settings in the radio or MMI* whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or one of the doors ⇨ *page 31*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Tips

If your vehicle has been standing for an extended period, please note the following:
– The proximity sensors are deactivated after a few days to save power. You then have to pull on the door handle once to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open the vehicle.
– To prevent the battery from being discharged and to preserve your vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually switches ▸

off unnecessary convenience functions. It is possible that you will not be able to unlock your vehicle using these convenience functions.

– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 235*.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside



Fig. 22 Driver's door: power locking switch



Fig. 23 Rear center console: power locking switch

▸ Press the button 🔒 to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the button 🔓 to unlock the vehicle.

You can **lock** and **unlock** the vehicle using the switches in the driver´s or passenger´s door ⇨ *fig. 22*. You can only **lock** the vehicle using the switch in the rear center console ⇨ *fig. 23*.

If you lock the vehicle using the power locking switch, please note the following:

– If a door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the power locking system switch.
– You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
– The diodes in the power locking switch illuminate when all the doors are closed and locked.
– Front doors: you can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
– Rear doors: pull the door handle *once* to release the lock. Pull the handle *again* to open the door.
– If you have a crash and the airbag is activated, the doors automatically unlock.

⚠ WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when it is actuated.
– On a vehicle locked from the outside the power locking system switch is inoperative.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

ⓘ Tips

– Your vehicle is locked automatically at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto Lock) ⇨ *page 27*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the opening function in the power locking system switch 🔓.
– The rear power locking switch does not unlock the doors.

Setting power locking

Various settings can be adjusted in the MMI.

Adjusting door unlocking

▸ Select: CAR button > **(Car) Systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking** > **Unlock doors** - you can specify which doors unlock when you open the vehicle.

Selecting **All** and pressing the 🔓 button on the remote control key unlocks the entire vehicle.

Selecting **Driver** and pressing the 🔓 button on the remote control key once unlocks only the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock. If you press the 🔓 button twice, the entire vehicle will unlock. If you press the 🔓 button, the entire vehicle will always lock. ▶

Tone when locking

► Select: CAR button > **(Car) Systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking** > **Tone when locking**

If you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Emergency unlocking/locking the doors

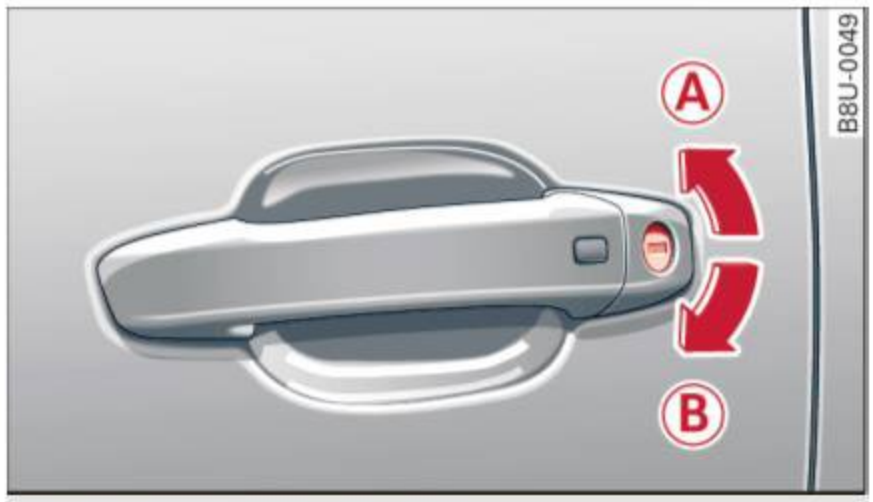


Fig. 24 Driver's door: door lock



Fig. 25 Front passenger's door/rear door: emergency lock

If the central locking fails, you must unlock/lock the doors separately.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

► To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 24*.
► To lock the driver's door, put the selector lever in the P position and turn the key **once** to the closing position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors

The emergency lock is located on the rear side of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

► Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 25*.
► Insert the key into the slot on the inside and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors close, it is no longer possible to open them from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. If the child safety lock is switched on for one of the rear doors, the door can be opened from the outside after pulling the door handle once from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents your vehicle from being started by unauthorized persons.

Inside the key there is a computer chip. This chip automatically activates/deactivates the electronic immobilizer.

Applies to vehicles with ignition lock:

The electronic immobilizer deactivates automatically when you insert the remote control key into the ignition lock. It activates again automatically when you remove the remote control key from the ignition lock.

Applies to vehicles with convenience key:

If the remote control key is located inside the vehicle and you press the START ENGINE STOP button, the electronic immobilizer deactivates automatically. If you switch the ignition off and remove the remote control key from the vehicle, the electronic immobilizer activates again automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The key can disarm the electronic engine immobilizer and permit an unauthorized person to start the engine and enable operation of the vehicle systems such as power window or power sunroof leading to serious personal injury. ►

Tips

– The vehicle cannot be started if an unauthorized key is used. The vehicle may not start if another radio device such as a key for another vehicle or a transponder is located on the key ring.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 235*.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 26 Rear lid: handle



Fig. 27 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Briefly press the button on the remote control key. The rear lid will unlock.
- To open the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the remote control key for at least one second.
- Briefly pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 27*, or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 26*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Pull down the luggage compartment lid at the grip and let it close using a gentle push ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could suddenly open when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.
– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically after it is closed again.
– In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 35*.

162.561.8U0.21

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to vehicles: with automatic luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically.

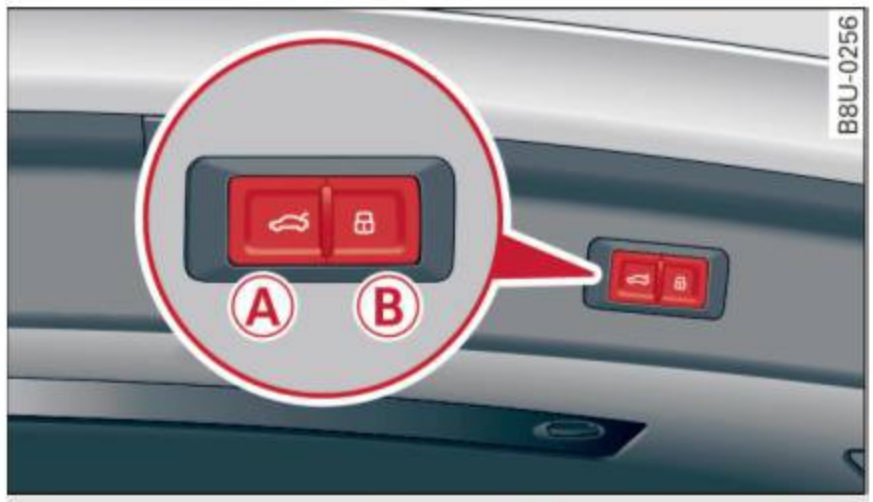


Fig. 28 Luggage compartment lid: Ⓐ closing button, Ⓑ lock button (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Briefly press the button on the remote control key. The rear lid will unlock.
- ▸ To open the luggage compartment lid, press the button on the remote control key for at least one second.
- ▸ Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 33, fig. 27* briefly. Or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *page 33, fig. 26*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Pull the button in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 28*. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press and hold the button on the master key until the luggage compartment lid is closed (vehicles with convenience key*) ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 28* (vehicles with convenience key*). The remote control key must not be more than approximately 4 ft. (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock. The vehicle locks ⇨ ⚠.

Setting the luggage compartment lid open position

- ▸ Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position. The position can be stored at only one specific height.
- ▸ Press and hold the button for at least four seconds and this will store the desired open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- ▸ To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully press the luggage compartment lid upward.
- ▸ Press and hold the button again for at least four seconds and this will store the new open position.

The opening/closing process will stop immediately if:

– You pull the button in the driver's door, or
– You release the button on the remote control master key (vehicles with convenience key*), or
– You press the button or button (vehicles with convenience key*) in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You press against the luggage compartment lid against the direction it is moving, or
– when something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the handle or one of the or buttons (vehicles with convenience key*) now, the luggage compartment lid will either open or close, depending on what angle it was at.

If you pull lightly on its handle, the rear lid will close.

You can manually stop the automatic opening/closing of the luggage compartment lid. The automatic closing process begins if you push down on the rear lid.

⚠ WARNING

– Never close the rear lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing ▸

force of the rear lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
– To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– If there is a luggage rack or bicycle rack mounted on the rear lid, it may not be able to open completely or an opened rear lid may close by itself because of the added weight. So the open rear lid must be supported or the weight must be removed from the luggage rack first.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the rear lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the master key. When the rear lid is closed again, it locks automatically.
– The following applies to vehicles equipped with the convenience key* feature: if the remote control key is left in the luggage compartment, luggage compartment will automatically unlock itself after you lock the vehicle. This prevents you from unintentionally locking your key in the luggage compartment.
– If the vehicle battery charge drops below a certain level, you can still open or close the rear lid manually, however, you will need to apply more force to close it.

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from inside the luggage compartment.



Fig. 29 Luggage compartment lid emergency release

- ▸ Pry the cover off using the key.
- ▸ Press the lever with the key in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.

Child safety lock

Mechanical child safety lock

Applies to vehicles: with mechanical child safety lock

The child safety locks prevent the rear doors from opening from the inside.



Fig. 30 Opened rear doors: child safety lock

- ▸ To switch on the child safety lock, turn the key in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ To switch off the child safety lock, turn the key in the opposite direction of the arrow.

When the child safety locks are activated, the inside door handles do not work and the doors can only be opened from the outside.

Power child safety lock

Applies to vehicles: With power child safety lock

The child safety locks prevent the rear doors from opening from the inside.



Fig. 31 Section of driver's door: controls

- To activate the child safety lock for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door. The LED in the button turns on.
- To deactivate the child safety lock for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door. The LED in the button turns off.

The following features are switched off:

– The interior door handle in the respective rear door,
– The power window switch in the respective rear door.

To activate the child safety lock on both sides, you must press the buttons one after the other.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise they could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Power Windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

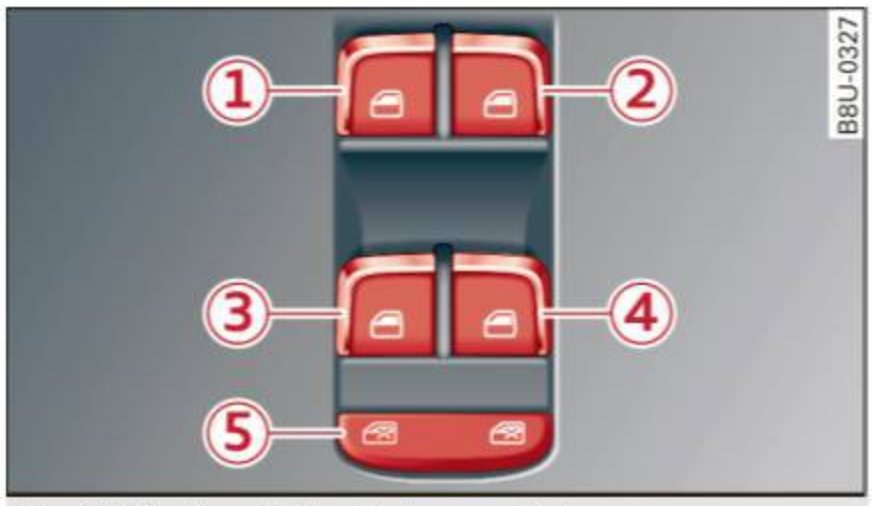


Fig. 32 Section of driver's door: controls

All power window switches are equipped with a **two-stage function**:

Opening the windows

- Press the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- To open the window completely, press the switch down to the **second level** briefly.

Closing the windows

- Pull the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- To close the window completely, pull the switch up to the **second level** briefly.

Power window switches

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door
⑤ Safety button (or two safety buttons in vehicles with power child safety locks* ⇨ *page 36*)

Child safety lock

When the safety button ⑤ is pressed, the symbol in the button turns on. The power window switches in the rear doors are switched off.

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period ▶

of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. It could cause injury by pinching.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

After switching the ignition off, you can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes. The power windows are not switched off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening/closing

All of the windows and the panorama roof can be opened/closed at the same time.

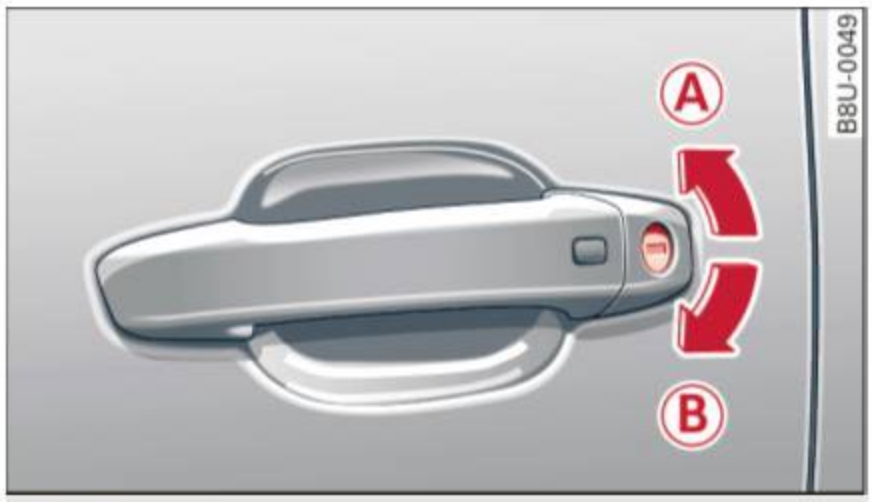


Fig. 33 Driver's door: door lock

Convenience opening

▸ Hold the key in the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 33* until all of the windows are in the desired position and the panorama roof is tilted open.

Convenience closing

▸ Hold the key in the lock position Ⓑ until all the windows and panorama roof are closed.

For vehicles with panorama sunroof: When you open or close the panorama sunroof, the power sunshade will also open or close.

WARNING

– Never close the windows and the power sunroof inattentively and without checking - there is risk of injury.
– You must always watch when the windows are being raised so that no one can be trapped. If you release the key, the closing action is immediately canceled.
– Always read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 27*.

Correcting power window malfunctions

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, the one-touch up and down feature must be activated again.

▸ Pull the power window switch until the window is completely raised.
▸ Release the switch and pull it again for at least one second.
▸ Press the power window switch until the window is completely lowered.
▸ Release the switch and press it again for at least one second. Now you can close the window as usual.

Panorama roof

Opening/closing the roof

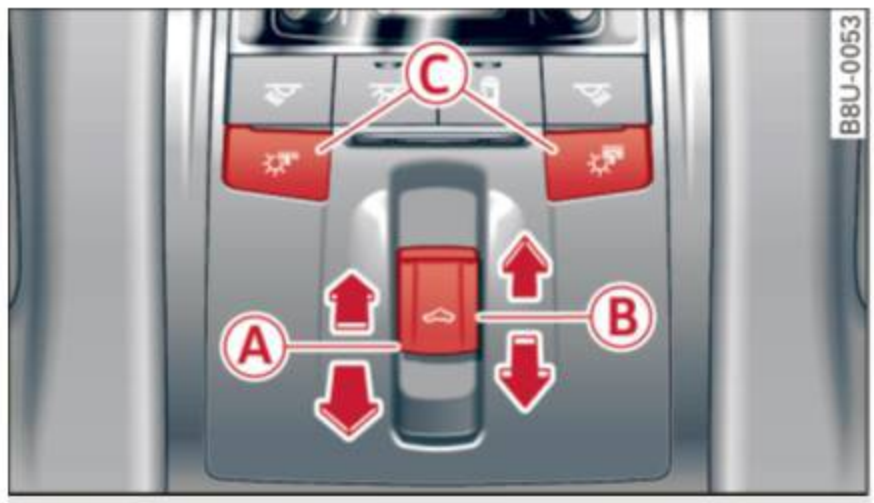


Fig. 34 Front headliner: panorama roof buttons

Ⓐ Tilting the roof

▸ To tilt the sunroof completely, press the button up briefly to the second level
▸ To close the sunroof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠. ▶

- To set a position between opened and closed, press/pull the button up to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Sliding the roof

- To open the sunroof completely, slide the button back up to the second level.
- To close the sunroof completely, slide the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To set a position between opened and closed, slide the button forward/back up to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓒ Opening/closing the sun shade

- To completely open the sun shade, briefly press the right button.
- To completely close the sun shade, briefly press the left button.
- To stop the sun shade, press the corresponding button again.

After the ignition is switched off, you can still operate the panoramic sunroof for about 10 minutes. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

⚠ WARNING

Be careful when closing the panoramic sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! For this reason, always remove the ignition key when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close your panoramic sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Sudden rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

– For information about convenience opening/closing, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.
– The panorama roof will only open down to -4 °F (-20 °C).

Emergency closing the roof

If an object is detected when closing, the panorama roof will open again automatically. In this case, you can then close it with the power emergency closing function.

- Pull the respective button ⇨ *page 37, fig. 34* within 5 seconds after the roof opens automatically and hold until the panorama roof is closed.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 35 Instrument panel: light switch

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - lights off. On some market-specific versions, the daytime running lights* will switch on when the ignition is switched on in this position.

- **USA models**: the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 35* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight). The **Daytime running lights** can be switched on and off in the radio or the MMI* ⇨ *page 41*, ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models**: the daytime running lights switch on automatically when the ignition is switched on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 35* is in the **O** position, or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO* - Automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels. ⇨ ⚠.

- Parking light

- Low beam headlights

- All weather lights. Turn the switch to parking light or low beam headlight . Pull the switch up to the first notch (1).

- Rear fog lights. Turn the switch to parking light or low beam headlight . Pull the switch up to the second notch (2).

All-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that the headlights do not blind oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Static cornering light*

The static cornering light depends on equipment and only works when the light switch is in the AUTO position. The cornering light switches on automatically at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km) when the steering wheel is at a certain angle. The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

⚠ WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. Fog, for example, cannot be detected by the light sensors*. So always switch on the low beam under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations, to prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle.
- Please observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Note

The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations, to prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle. ▶

Tips

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Therefore, do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Some of the exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 41*.
- If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, you will hear a warning tone.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signals and high beam lever

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

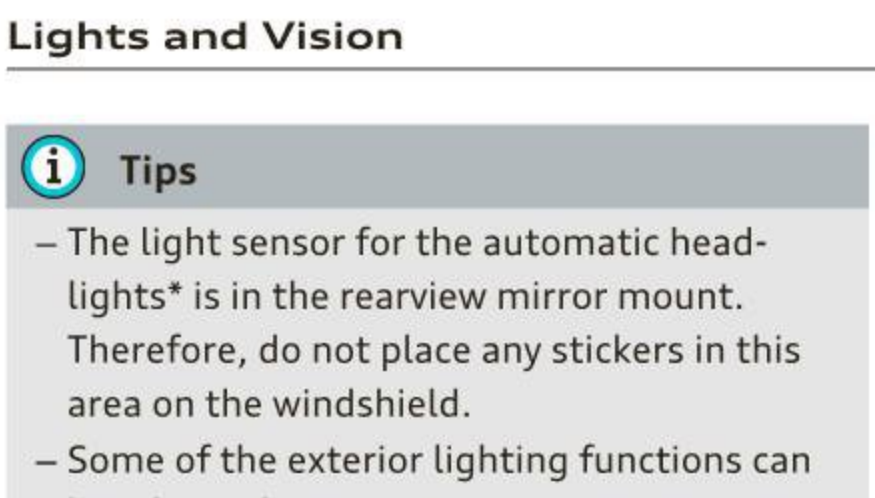


Fig. 36 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦⇨

With the ignition on, the signal lights will blink if the lever is in the corresponding position.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you just tap the lever.

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on (vehicles with high beam assist* ⇨ *page 40*

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

Notes on these features

- The *turn signals* only work with the ignition turned on. The indicator lights ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster also blink.
- After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
- The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
- The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights switched on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher.

WARNING

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could blind oncoming traffic.

Headlight assist

Applies to vehicles: with headlight assistant

The headlight assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

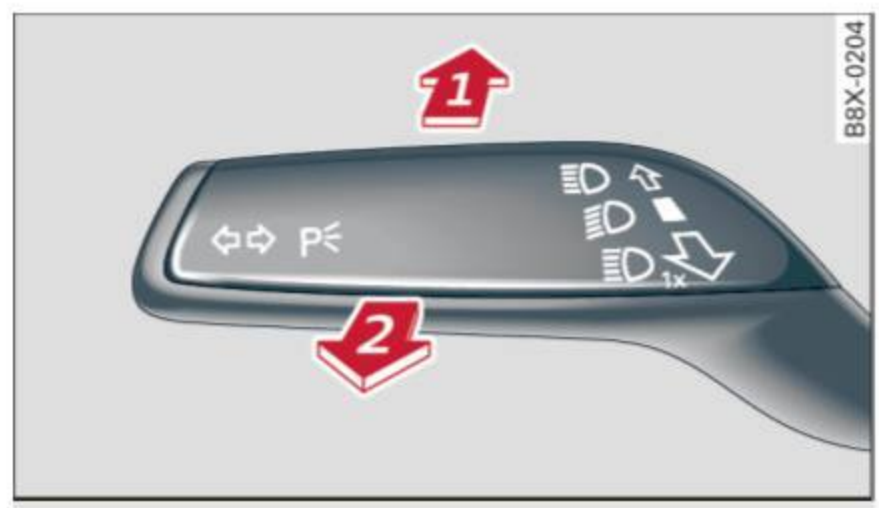


Fig. 37 Turn signal and high beam lever: Turning headlight assistant on/off

Activating headlight assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be in the AUTO position. ▶

▸ To activate the headlight assistant, tap the lever forward ①. The indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the headlights are switched on/off automatically. The indicator light also turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ①. The indicator light turns on.

▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ②. The headlight assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ Pull the lever into position ② to operate the headlight flasher when the headlight assist is activated. The headlight assistant remains active.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Headlight assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

Headlight assist: Unavailable. No camera view

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Therefore, do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

Headlight assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

– In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
– On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
– When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
– In tight curves and on steep slopes.
– In poorly lit areas.
– With strong reflectors, such as signs.
– If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting exterior lighting

The functions are selected in the radio or MMI.*

▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car) Systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Coming home (lights when leaving car)*, Leaving home (lights when unlocking car)*

The **coming home** function illuminates the area around the vehicle when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. Depending on vehicle equipment, the function can be switched on and off or the length of time the lights remain on* can be adjusted.

The **leaving home** function illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking it. This function can be switched on and off.

The **coming home** and **leaving home** functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the AUTO position ⇨ *page 39, fig. 35*.

Daytime running lights

USA models: You can switch the daytime running lights **on** and **off**.

Canada models: The function cannot be turned off. It is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

162.561.8U0.21

Emergency flashers



Fig. 38 Center console: emergency flasher switch

The emergency flashers makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.

- Press the switch ⚠ ⇨ *fig. 38* to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are on, all four turn signals blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

The emergency flashers will turn on automatically if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed.

Tips

You should turn on the emergency flashers when:

– you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when
– your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when
– your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you.

Interior lighting

Front/rear interior lighting



Fig. 39 Front headliner: interior lighting controls



Fig. 40 Rear headliner: LED reading lights*

Press the applicable button:

- Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

- Reading lights* on/off

Interior lighting

There are other interior lighting functions that are available. Some functions can be adjusted in the MMI. Select: CAR function button > **Car systems*** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

Instrument illumination

The brightness of the instrument cluster, the center console lighting and the Infotainment system display can be set.



Fig. 41 Instrument illumination

▸ To reduce or increase the brightness, turn the thumbwheel down or up.

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the dials reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the headlights on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 42 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. Your may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes - accident risk!

Note

– If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls. ▶

Tips

If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.

Dimming the mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic dimming rearview mirror.

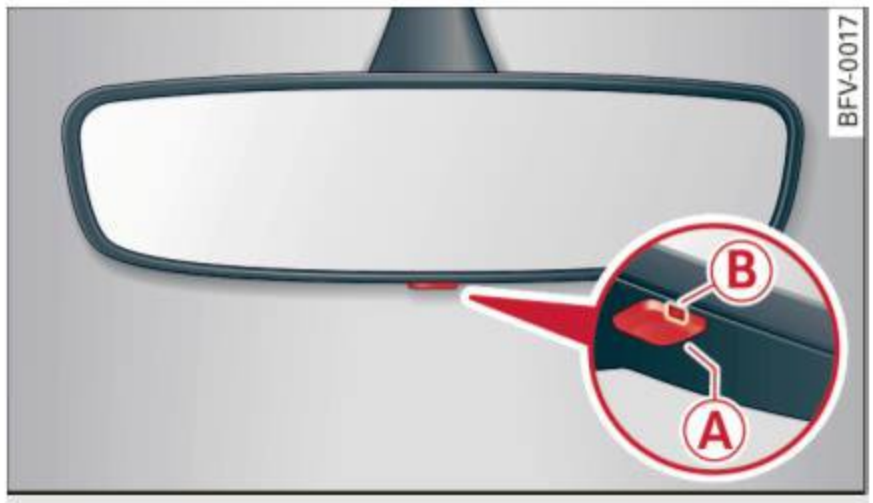


Fig. 43 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ To switch the dimming function on or off, press the button Ⓐ. If the indicator light Ⓑ turns on, the interior and exterior mirrors* will automatically dim when light shines on them (for example, headlights shining from the rear).

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and respiratory system.

– Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte can cause irritation to the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
– If electrolyte gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
– If electrolyte contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
– If swallowed and person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by medical professional. Get medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the dimming function is switched off for the interior lights, the exterior lights will also not be dimmed.
– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors



Fig. 44 Driver's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their retainers and turned toward the doors ①. The sun visors can also be moved* back and forth lengthwise in this position. ▸

The mirror lighting* switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror (2) opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

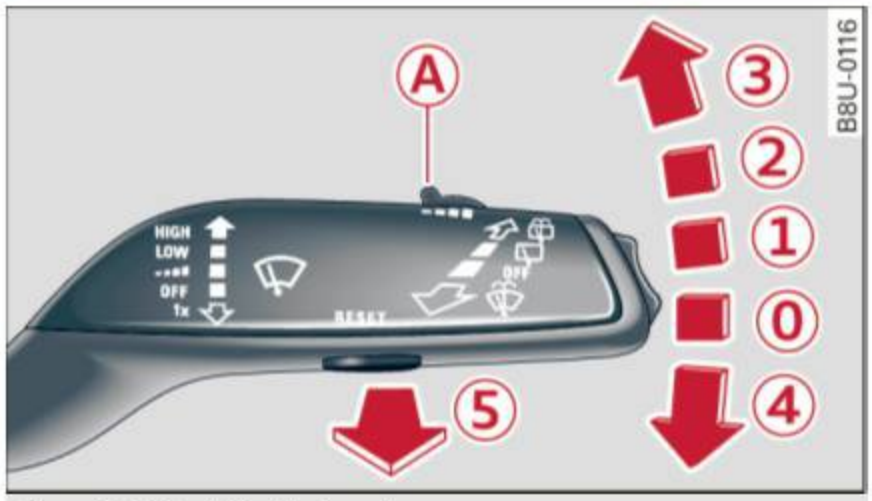


Fig. 45 Windshield wiper lever



Fig. 46 Actuate the rear window wiper

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

(0) - Windshield wipers off

(1) - Interval mode. To extend/shorten the wiper intervals, move the switch (A) to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor*, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the rain sensor sensitivity is set (switch (A) to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield.

(2) - Slow wiping

(3) - Fast wiping

(4) - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

(5) - Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position (5) within 10 seconds of the after-wipe. The after-wipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

(6) - Wipe the rear window. The rear wiper moves about every 6 seconds.

(7) - Clean the rear window. The number of wipes depends on how long the lever is held in position (7).

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for manually switching the wipers on according to the visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness or low sun, can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 46, Replacing front windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position (0)). This prevents unintentional switching on and damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is turned off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor* ▶

function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles of the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

Windshield wiper

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 46*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.

Rear window wiper

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the rear window.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing front windshield wiper blades

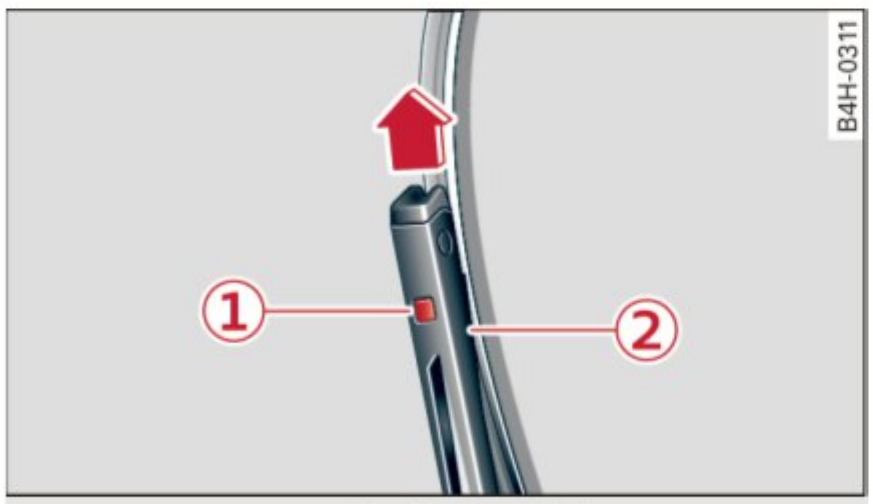


Fig. 47 Removing windshield wiper blades

Wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 45, fig. 45*).
- ▸ Switch off the ignition and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ ⇨ *page 45, fig. 45* until the windshield wiper moves into the service position.
- ▸ To bring the wiper blades back into the original position, switch the ignition on and operate the windshield wiper lever.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 47* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ To bring the wiper blades back into the original position, switch the ignition on and operate the windshield wiper lever.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– The windshield wiper blades must only be replaced when in the service position! Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.
– To help prevent damage to the wiper system, always loosen blades which are frozen to the windshield before operating wipers.
– To help prevent damage to wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.
– To help prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.

Tips

- Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the how easily the glass surface can be cleaned.
- You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
- You cannot activate the service position when the front lid is open.

Replacing rear windshield wiper blade



Fig. 48 Rear window wiper: removing the wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the rear window.
- ▸ Pull the wiper blade and holder out of the mount.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the wiper blade retainer in the direction of the arrow into the mount.
- ▸ Fold the rear window wiper arm back onto the windshield.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

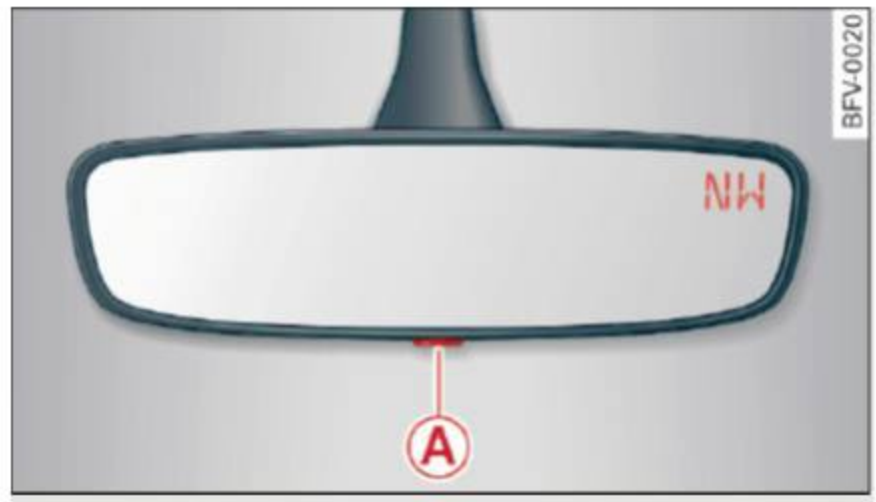


Fig. 49 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

- ▸ To turn the compass in the mirror on or off, press the button (A) until the compass display in the mirror appears or disappears.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

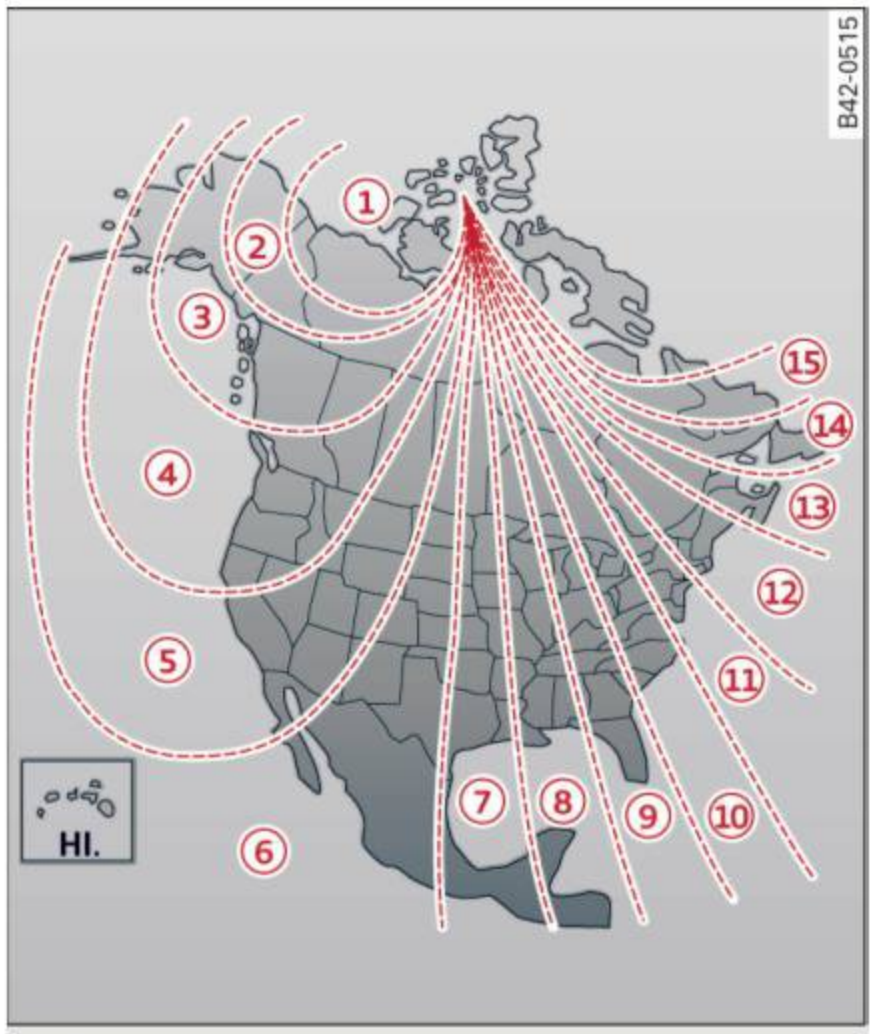


Fig. 50 North America: magnetic zone map

- Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 47, fig. 49* until the number of the set magnetic zone appears in the rearview mirror.
- Press the button Ⓐ repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to vehicles: with digital compass

You must recalibrate the compass if it does not display the correct direction.

- Press and hold the button Ⓐ ⇨ *page 47, fig. 49* until a **C** appears in the rearview mirror.
- Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the rearview mirror.

WARNING

– To avoid endangering yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

– The digital compass is to be used as a directional aid only. Even though you may want to look at it while you are driving, you must still pay attention to traffic, road and weather conditions as well as other possible hazards.

Seats and storage

General information

Important information

WARNING

Refer to ⇨ *page 95, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

– you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
– your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
– the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇨ *page 112*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child safety seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.
– It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.
– Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.

Driver's seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

▸ Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 49*.
▸ Adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 51*. ▶

WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Front passenger's seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- ▸ Move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the fore and aft adjustment range ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 49*.
- ▸ Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 51*.
- ▸ Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.

Front seats

Manual seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable seats

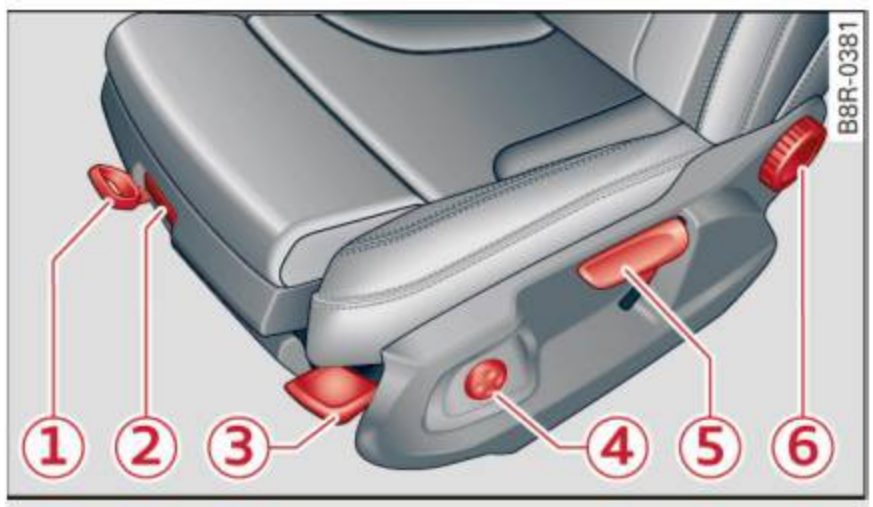


Fig. 51 Front seats: manual seat adjustment

① - Moving the seat forward/back: pull the lever and slide the seat.

② - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the handle.

③ - Adjusting the angle of the seat surface*. Pull/press the lever.

④ - Adjusting the lumbar support*: press the button in the desired direction.

⑤ - Moving the seat up/down: pull/press the lever.

⑥ - Adjusting the backrest angle: turn the adjusting wheel.

WARNING

- Only adjust the front seat with when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Adjusting the seat carelessly or without checking can pinch hands and fingers.
- The front seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Power seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles: with power adjustable seats

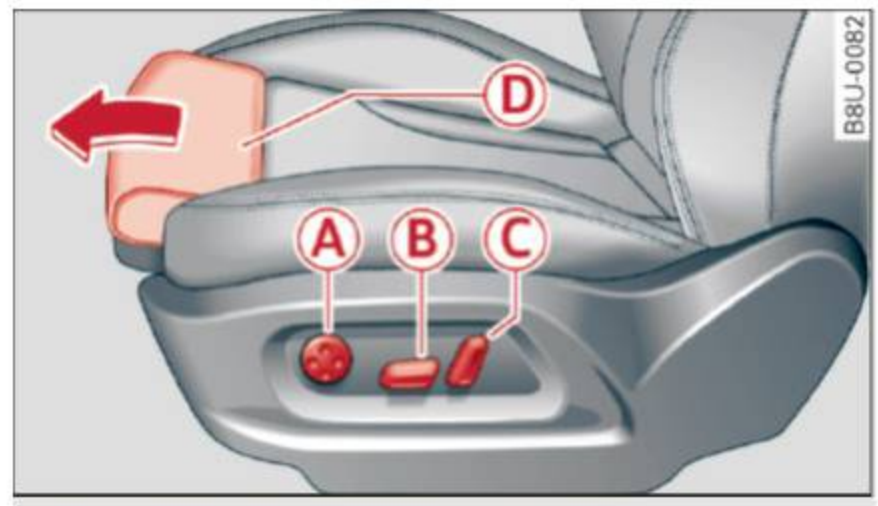


Fig. 52 Front seats: power seat adjustment

Ⓐ - Adjusting the lumbar support: press the button in the applicable position.

Ⓑ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down. To adjust the front seat cushion, press ▸

the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

Ⓑ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

Ⓒ - Adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

Ⓓ - Lengthening/shortening the upper thigh support*: lift the handle.

WARNING

- Only adjust the front seat with when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident
- The power adjustment for the front seats also works with the ignition switched off or with the ignition key removed. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
- To reduce the risk of injury during sudden braking or in a collision, the driver and front passenger should not have their backrests in the reclined position while driving or riding. The safety belts and airbag system can provide the greatest protection possible when the backrests are in the upright position and the safety belts are worn correctly. The more a backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of injury due to an incorrect seating position and safety belt position.

Front center armrest

Applies to vehicles: with front center armrest



Fig. 53 Armrest between the driver's seat and passenger's seat

- ▸ Fold up the center armrest support to open the storage compartment.
- ▸ To adjust the center armrest, lift up the armrest notch by notch.
- ▸ To bring the center armrest back down, raise it out of the top notch and then fold it back down.

Please note that the driver's ability to move his or her arm may be restricted when the armrest is folded down. Because of this, the armrest should not be folded down during city driving.

The armrest can slide forward and back.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

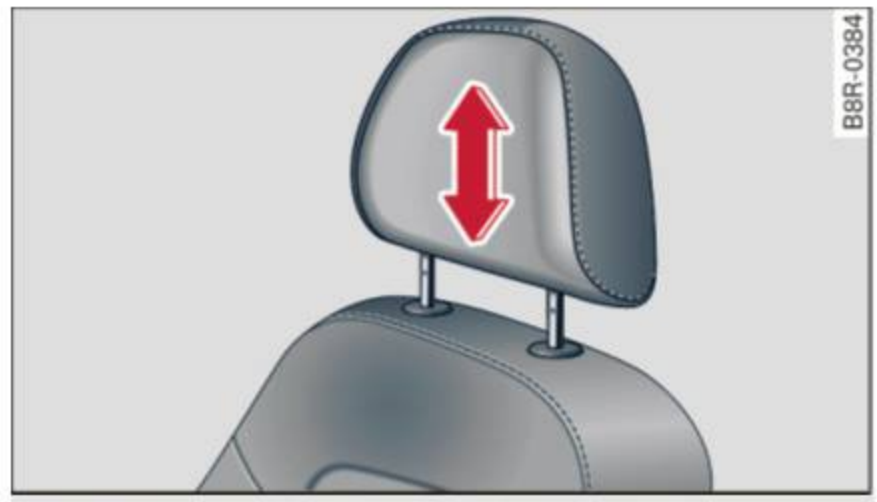


Fig. 54 Front seats head restraints: adjusting the height

The head restraints on the *front* seats can be adjusted to provide safe support to head and neck at the optimum height. When optimally adjusted, the top of the restraint should be level with the top of the head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to ▶

this position as possible ⇨ *page 98, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

- Grasp the sides of the head restraint with both hands and slide it upward/downward until you feel it click into place ⇨ *fig. 54*.

Refer to ⇨ *page 98, Proper adjustment of head restraints* for guidelines on how to adjust the height of the front head restraints to suit the occupant's body size.

WARNING

- Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 98, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

Tips

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Rear head restraints

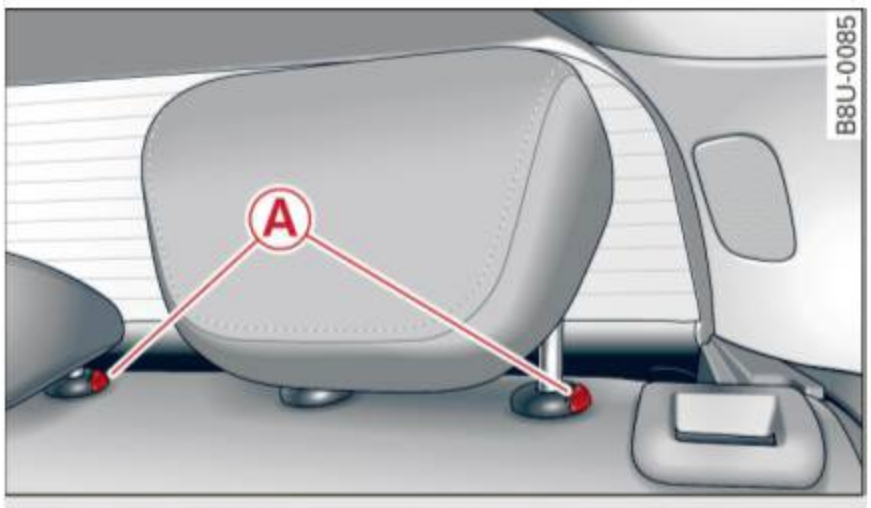


Fig. 55 Rear seats: outer head restraints



Fig. 56 Rear head restraints: release point

If there are passengers in the rear seat, move the head restraints up on the occupied seats at least to the next notch ⇨ ⚠.

Adjusting the head restraints

- To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint down, press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 55* and slide the head restraint downward.

Removing the head restraints

- Fold the backrest forward ⇨ *page 59*.
- Slide the headrest all the way up.
- Press the release point Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 56*, for example with a screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, and the button Ⓐ. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the head restraints

- Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until you feel the posts click into place.
- Press the button Ⓐ and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

So that the driver can have a better view to the rear, the head restraints should be pushed down completely when the rear seats are not occupied.

WARNING

- Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child seat. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 98, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

Tips

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Ashtray

Applies to vehicles: with ashtray



Fig. 57 Front center console: ashtray

The ashtray can be set in either one of the front cup holders.

- ▸ To open the ashtray, fold the cover up.
- ▸ To empty the ashtray, pull it out of the cup holder. Please make sure after emptying that the ashtray is placed securely back in the mount.

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to vehicles: with cigarette lighter



Fig. 58 Front center console: cigarette lighter

- ▸ Open the cover.
- ▸ Press the cigarette lighter in.
- ▸ Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Sockets

Applies to vehicles: with socket



Fig. 59 Front center console: 12 Volt socket*



Fig. 60 Rear center console: 12 Volt socket*

- ▸ Open the socket cover ⇨ *fig. 59* or ⇨ *fig. 60*.
- ▸ Insert the plug for the electrical device into the socket.

The 12 volt socket can be used for electrical accessories. The power consumption at the outlet must not exceed 120 watts.

There is an additional 12V socket in the center console.

Before you purchase any accessories, always read and follow the information in ⇨ *page 234, Additional accessories and parts replacement*.

WARNING

The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them only function when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk ▸

of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 Volt sockets or the cigarette lighter.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

Tips

The vehicle battery drains when accessories are turned on but the engine is off.

Storage

General overview

WARNING

– Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not put away could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.
– When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.
– Any pieces of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.

Beverage holders



Fig. 61 Center console: front cup holders

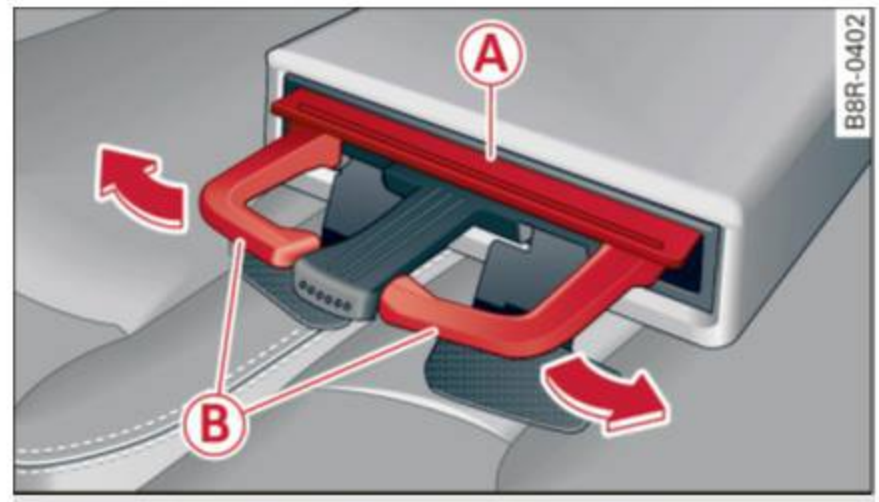


Fig. 62 Rear center armrest: rear cup holders

Opening the rear cup holders

▸ To open the cup holder, tap on the symbol Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 62*.
▸ To adjust the cup holder to fit the beverage container, push the corresponding arm Ⓑ in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Place the beverage in the holder and release the arm. The arm swings back by itself and secures the beverage.

Closing the rear cup holders

▸ To close the cup holders, press the center piece between both arms and push the cup holders all the way back into the slot.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.

– Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing ▶

scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
– Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.
– Never use the cupholder or adapter as an ashtray - risk of fire.

Note

Make sure your beverage container has a lid. If not, your beverage could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment or stain the seat covers.

Cup holders in the door pockets

A cup holder is located in all four doors.

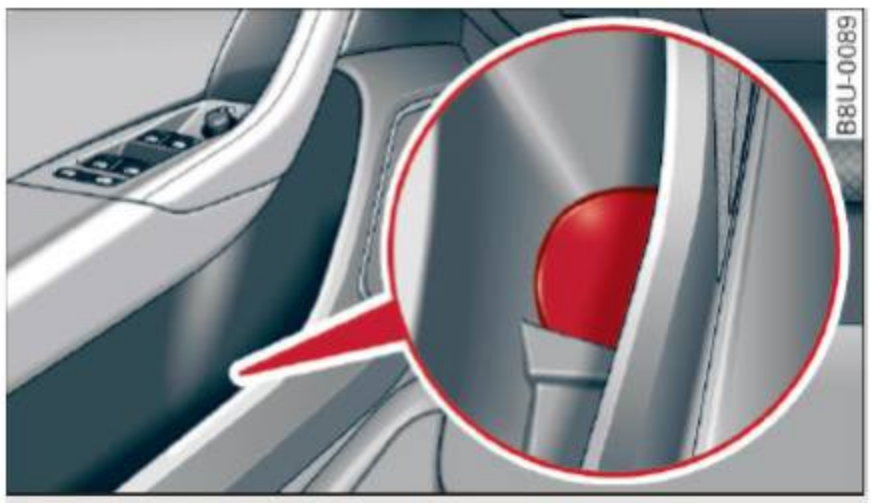


Fig. 63 Section of door trim: cup holder

The cup holder in the door pockets can fit 1 to 1.5 liter bottles.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury.
– Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
– Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.

Note

Make sure your beverage container has a lid. If not, your beverage could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment or stain the seat covers.

Glove compartment

The glove compartment is illuminated, cooled* and can be locked*.*



Fig. 64 Glove compartment

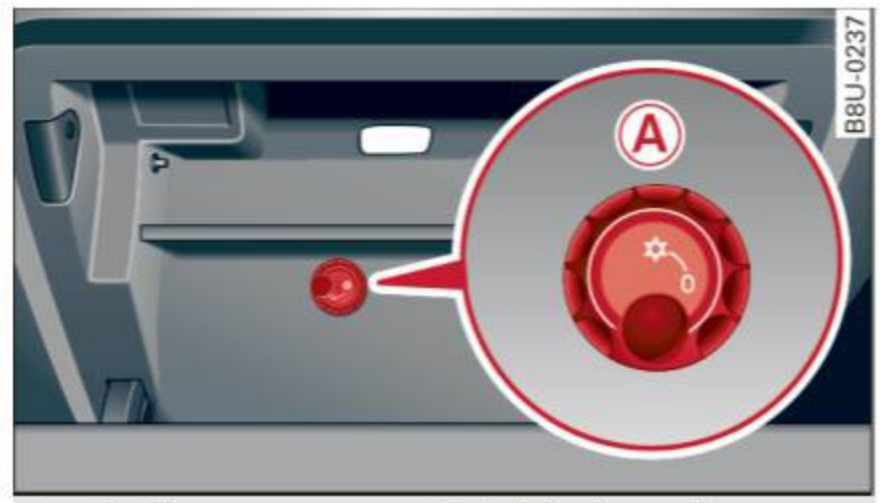


Fig. 65 Glove compartment: Switch for the cooling

To open glove compartment

▸ Pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 64* and swing the cover down to open.

To close glove compartment

▸ Push the glove compartment lid upward until the lock engages.

To switch the cooling on

▸ Turn the rotary switch Ⓐ counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the rotary switch must be displayed ⇨ *fig. 65* accordingly. ▶

To switch the cooling off

▸ Turn the rotary switch Ⓐ clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The cooling box works only in the cooling mode. If the climate control is in the heating mode, we recommend switching the cooling box off.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Additional storage

There are a variety of storage compartments and fasteners in various places in the vehicle.

– In the front center console.
– At the front end of the front seats*. You can store objects weighing up to 3.3 lbs (1.5 kg) in the drawer and objects weighing up to 2.2 lbs (1 kg) in the hinged compartment.
– In the door trim.
– Coat hooks next to and above the rear doors.
– Nets* on the backrests of the front seats.
– Coat hooks/retaining hooks in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

– When driving, do not leave any hard objects on the rear window shelf or allow your pet to sit on the shelf. They could become a hazard for vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or a crash.
– Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not stored could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.
– When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.
– Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.
– To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 128, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.
– Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
– The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
– Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.
– Always keep the compartment above the rearview mirror closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking maneuvers or a collision.

Note

Objects located on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window could damage the heating wires for the rear window defogger.

Tips

– A vent slot is located between the shelf and the rear window. Do not block the vent with any items you may place on the rear window shelf.
– Do not place bulky items on the rear window shelf as they could restrict or block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror.

Roof rack

Description and mounting locations

Additional cargo can be carried with a roof luggage rack.

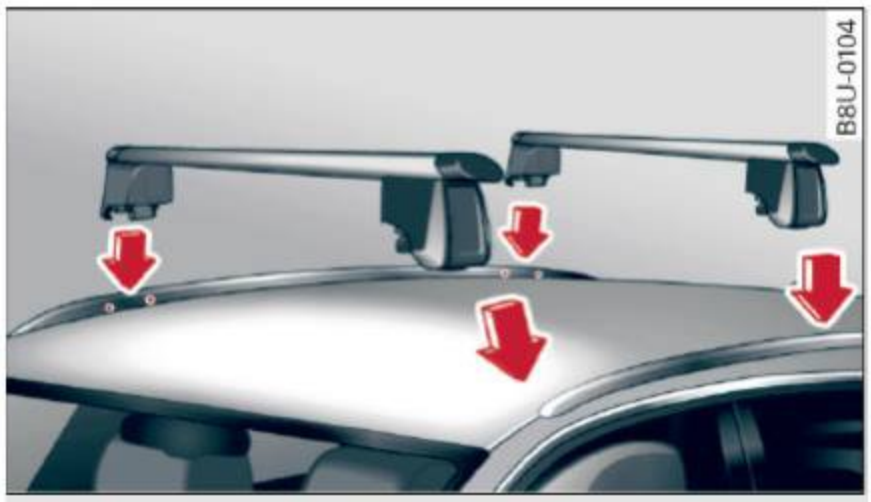


Fig. 66 Roof rack attachment points

▸ Always read and follow the instructions provided by the roof rack manufacturer when installing the roof rack system.

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only use roof racks approved for your vehicle. These approved roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments or carrier systems are needed to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend using roof racks from the Audi original accessories program.
– When installing the roof rack, make sure it is only mounted on the designated locations on the roof ⇨ *fig. 66*.
– We recommend that you keep the installation instructions for your roof rack system together with your Owner's literature in the vehicle.

When should the roof rack be removed?

– Before going through an automatic car wash (it is best to ask the car wash operator for advice).
– When not in use, to reduce fuel consumption, wind noise and to guard against theft.

WARNING

– Use of an unapproved roof rack or incorrect mounting of an approved roof rack can cause the roof rack or the items attached to it to fall off the roof onto the road.
– Objects falling from the roof of a vehicle can cause a crash and personal injury.
– Only mount the roof rack on the designated locations on the roof ⇨ *fig. 66*.
– The roof rack system must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.
– When driving with a roof rack system, changes to the center of gravity and wind resistance can change the vehicle handling and lead to a collision. Always adapt your driving and your speed to the current conditions.

Note

– Your vehicle warranty does not cover any damages to the vehicle caused by using roof racks or mounting structures not approved by Audi for your vehicle. The same applies to damage resulting from incorrect roof rack installation.
– Always check the roof rack mountings and hardware before each trip and during a trip to make sure everything is securely tightened. If necessary, retighten the mountings and check the entire system from time to time.
– After mounting a roof rack system, or when you transport objects on the roof of your vehicle, the height of the vehicle is naturally increased. Be careful when driving under low bridges or in parking garages for example. This could cause damage to the load and even the vehicle itself.
– Make sure that the open rear lid and the sunroof do not come into contact with objects on the roof.

Loading the roof rack

Always distribute loads evenly. Make sure anything on the roof rack is securely tied down.

▸ Always distribute the loads on the roof rack evenly.
▸ Always attach items to the roof rack securely before you drive off.

The maximum permissible roof weight is **165 lb (75 kg)**. The roof weight is the total of the ▶

weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. You must also not exceed the maximum load weight for the roof rack you are using.

When using a roof rack system which has a lower load carrying capacity, you must not use up the total maximum permissible load carrying capacity specified above. Instead, you should load the roof rack system only to the maximum capacity specified by the manufacturer of the roof rack system.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to the roof rack can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Make sure the roof rack is installed exactly as specified above ⇨ *page 57*.
- Always use suitable mounting straps for securing items to the roof rack to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.
- Items on the roof rack must always be securely mounted.
- The use of a roof rack can negatively affect the way a vehicle handles. Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a greater negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling. Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible load carrying capacity of the roof of your vehicle, the permissible axle weights and the permissible total weight of your vehicle ⇨ *page 229, Weights*.

Note

- Make sure the rear lid does not hit the cargo on the roof rack when you open it. On vehicles with automatic rear lid/trunk lid operation* you may have to adjust the open position of the rear lid ⇨ *page 34*.
- Remove the roof rack and attachment before taking your vehicle through an automatic car wash to avoid damage.

For the sake of the environment

As a result of the increased wind resistance created by a roof rack, your vehicle is using fuel unnecessarily. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and heed the important safety precautions on ⇨ *page 100, Storing cargo correctly*.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to vehicles: with luggage compartment cover



Fig. 67 Luggage compartment: cover attached



Fig. 68 Right front section of the luggage compartment: removing the luggage compartment cover

Attaching

▸ Pull the cover out and attach it into position in the mounting eyelets in the side trim ⇨ *fig. 67*.

Removing

▸ Pull both levers all the way in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 68*.

▸ Pull the cover upward to remove. ▶

Installing

- ▸ Place both sides of the cover into the mounts on the side trim.
- ▸ Push the cover downward until both sides click into place.

Storing*

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can store the cover under the cargo floor ⇨ *page 61*.

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of accidents, the luggage compartment cover should never be unsecured under any circumstances.
- – The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Note

To avoid damage, let the luggage compartment cover roll up slowly after removing.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

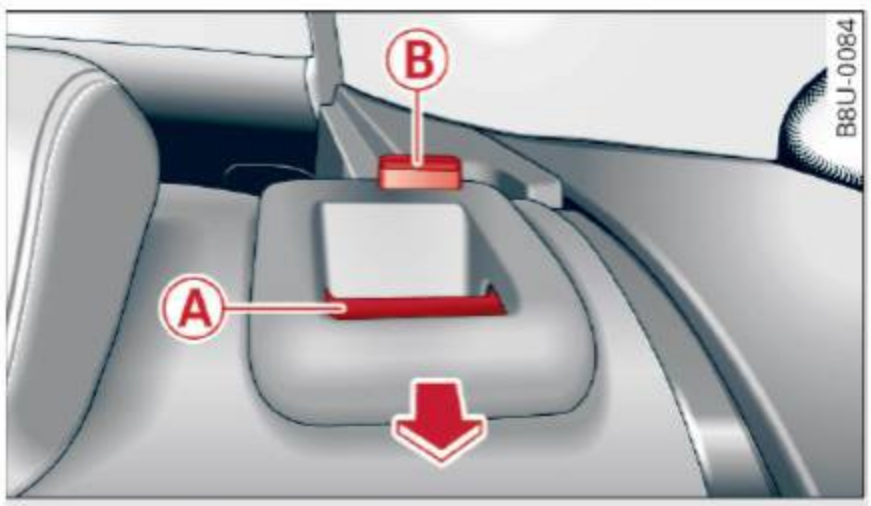


Fig. 69 Backrest: release lever

Folding the backrest forward

- ▸ Pull the release lever Ⓐ in the direction of the arrow and fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

- ▸ Fold the backrest back up again until it latches and the red marking Ⓑ is no longer visible ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- – The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belt of the center seating position can work properly to help protect the occupant.
- – The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.
- – Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seatback forward.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.

Note

- – If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
- – Make sure the seat belt is not pinched or damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.

Tie-downs and cargo net

Applies to vehicles: with cargo net

The cargo net prevents small objects from sliding.



Fig. 70 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

Net stretched out

- To secure objects with the cargo net, hang the front hooks on the net in the tie-downs first and then hang the rear hooks ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 100, Storing cargo correctly*.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reversible mat

Applies to vehicles: with cargo mat

The reversible mat protects the luggage compartment and bumper from dirt and scratches.*



Fig. 71 Luggage compartment: reversible mat

You can use the reversible mat with the dirt-resistant side or the decorative side. After loading or unloading, fold up the reversible mat and close the luggage compartment lid. Only store the reversible mat if it is dry.

Pass-through with ski bag

Applies to vehicles: with pass-through and ski bag

Long objects such as skis or snowboards can be transported in the ski bag.*

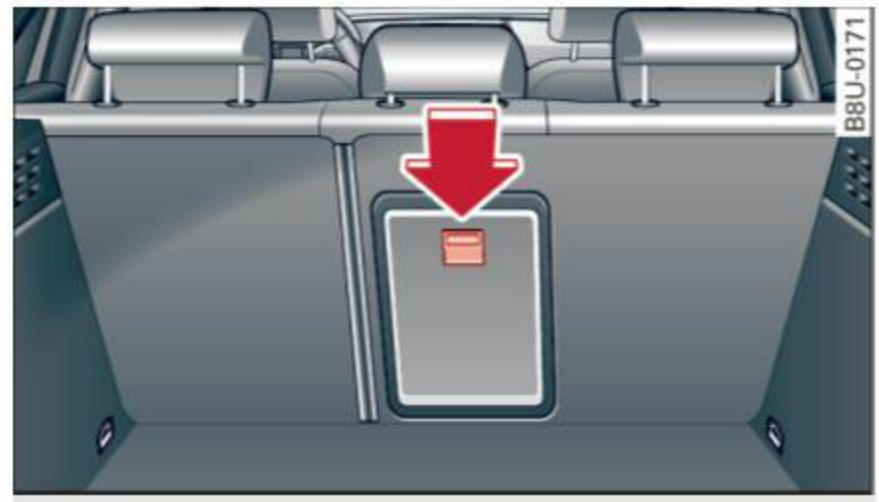


Fig. 72 Luggage compartment: pass-through in the backrest

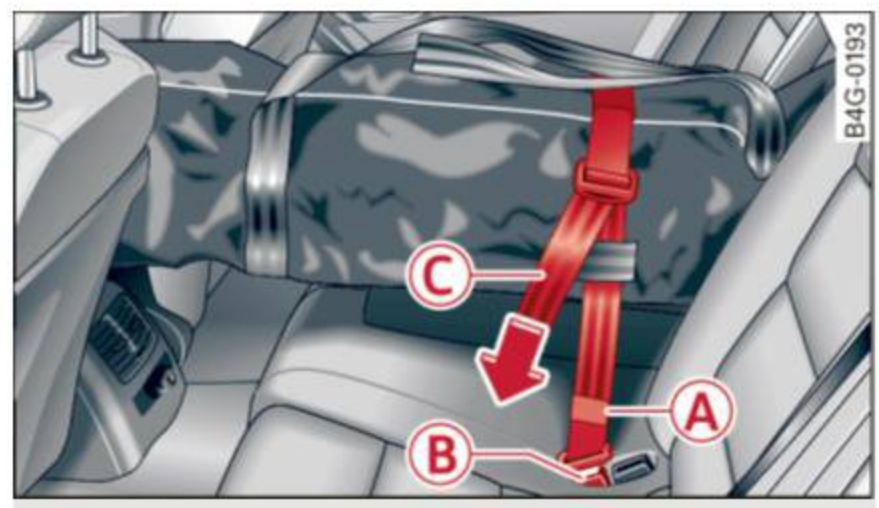


Fig. 73 Rear bench seat: securing the ski bag

Loading

- ▸ Press the release button in the luggage compartment ⇨ *fig. 72* and fold the pass-through toward the front.
- ▸ Push the ski sack through the opening from the luggage compartment. The zipper must face toward the rear ⇨ ⚠.

Securing

- ▸ Stick the strap Ⓐ on the bag in the center safety belt Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 73*.
- ▸ Tighten and secure the strap Ⓒ.

⚠ WARNING

– The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious personal injury, never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.
– When braking rapidly or during an accident, the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.
– Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection. Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents ⇨ *fig. 73*.
– For safety reasons, do not transport more than two pairs of skis in the ski sack.
– You must secure the ski sack with the strap after loading.
– Make sure all objects that you are transporting in the pass-through are secured. Otherwise they could slide around during sudden braking maneuvers and cause injury.

Tips

– Only fold the bag up if it is dry.
– When transporting skis or snowboards, tighten the securing strap between the bindings.
– Lay skis in the bag with the points facing forward and snowboards and ski pole points facing the rear.

Reversible cargo area floor

Applies to vehicles: with reversible cargo area floor



Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: reversible cargo area floor with the decorative side facing up

Reversing the cargo area floor

You can use the reversible cargo area floor with the dirt-resistant side or the decorative side.

- ▸ To turn up the dirt-resistant side, pull the cargo floor up at the handle ⇨ *fig. 74* and out toward the rear. Or
- ▸ To turn up the decorative side, take out the cargo floor at both handles on the left and right side.
- ▸ Reinsert the cargo floor.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Depending on the vehicle equipment, different systems could be installed:

– manual climate control system* or
– automatic climate control system*

The climate control system warms, cools and adds humidity to the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and panorama roof are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

The air pollutants filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with high air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

Key recognition*

The deluxe automatic climate control* settings are stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

WARNING

Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents.

– For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.
– Completely familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.
– Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

Note

– If you suspect that the air conditioner has been damaged, switch the system off to avoid further damage and have it inspected by a qualified dealership.
– Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

By reducing the amount of fuel you use, you also reduce the amount of pollutants emitted into the air.

Tips

– To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
– The energy management system may switch the seat heating* or rear window defroster off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

Manual climate control system controls

Applies to vehicles: with manual climate control system



Fig. 75 Manual climate control system controls

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons or adjusted using the dial and thumbwheel. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

A/C Switching the cooling mode on and off

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching recirculation mode on and off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠. If recirculation mode is switched on before the engine starts, it will be switched off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

The button switches off the recirculation mode.

Adjusting the blower

You can adjust the blower from 0 to IIII using the dial. To prevent the windows from fogging up, the blower should run, for example, at level I.

🔵 / 🔴 Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be freely adjusted using the left dial.

Adjusting the seat heating*

You can adjust the left and right heated seat temperature using the left/right thumbwheel. The seat heating is switched off when the level is set to 0. ▶

Switching the rear window defogger on and off

The rear window defogger only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after approximately 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

Adjusting air distribution and air vents

You can adjust the vents where the air will flow out of. The air distribution is easily adjusted between the two symbols positioned next to each other (/ / /).

In the setting, the windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off.

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident!
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating* function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating*.

Note

To avoid damaging the seat heating* elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Deluxe automatic climate control system controls

Applies to vehicles: with deluxe automatic climate control



Fig. 76 Deluxe automatic climate control system controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

OFF Switching the climate control system on and off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching the cooling mode on and off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching the recirculation mode on and off

To switch on the recirculation mode, press the button. The lower LED in the button turns on. In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or button switches recirculation mode off.

To switch on the automatic recirculation mode, press the button again. The upper LED in the button turns on. Recirculation mode switches on automatically when the engine is cold, if you are driving in reverse. The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air. Automatic recirculation mode is time restricted when cooling mode (A/C) is switched off and frost temperatures are identified.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on and off

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

/ Adjusting the temperature

The vehicle interior temperature can be adjusted for the driver and the front passenger using the left/right knob. Temperatures can be set between a range of 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C). If outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs with constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Adjusting air speed

You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. Use the left button to decrease the air speed, and use the right button to increase the air speed. To have the airflow regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

/ / Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. The buttons can be pressed individually or in combination with each other. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

MAX Switching the defroster on and off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72 °F (22 °C) or higher.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off. ▶

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on and off

The rear window defogger only operates when the engine is running and will be automatically switched off after approximately 10 minutes.

Synchronization

If you press the AUTO button longer, you can transfer the driver temperature setting to the front passenger. Synchronization is switched off as soon as the temperature for the front passenger's side is changed.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

Switching the temperature measurement units

The temperature display can be switched between °C and °F. Press and hold down the button ⇨ *fig. 76* and turn the knob on the driver's side for 3 seconds.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating* function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating*.

Note

To avoid damaging the seat heating* elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Driving

Steering

Manually adjustable steering wheel

The steering wheel position is fully adjustable up and down and forward and back.

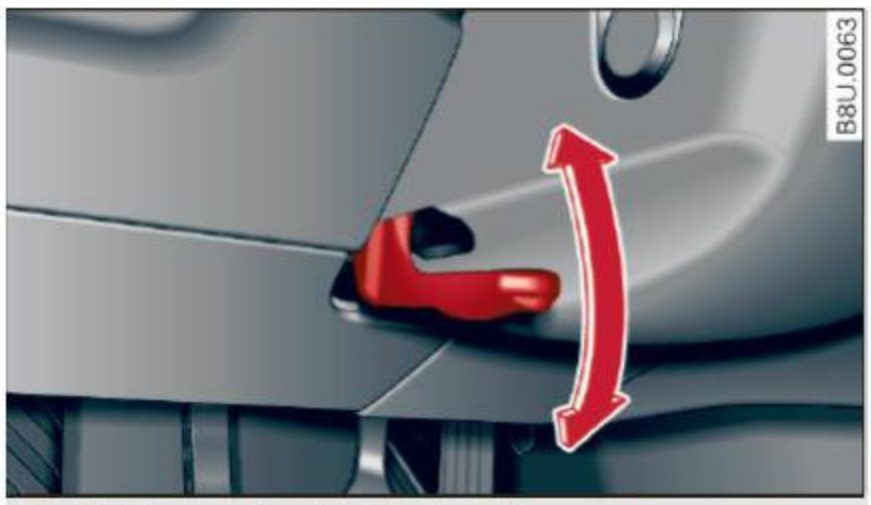


Fig. 77 Lever under the steering column

First, adjust the driver's seat correctly.

- ▸ Pull the lever ⇨ *fig. 77* ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

- – Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
- – Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 96, fig. 107*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
- – If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
- – If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
- – Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
- – Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with an ignition lock)

Starting the engine

Applies to vehicles: with ignition lock

The ignition is switched on and the engine started with the key in the ignition.

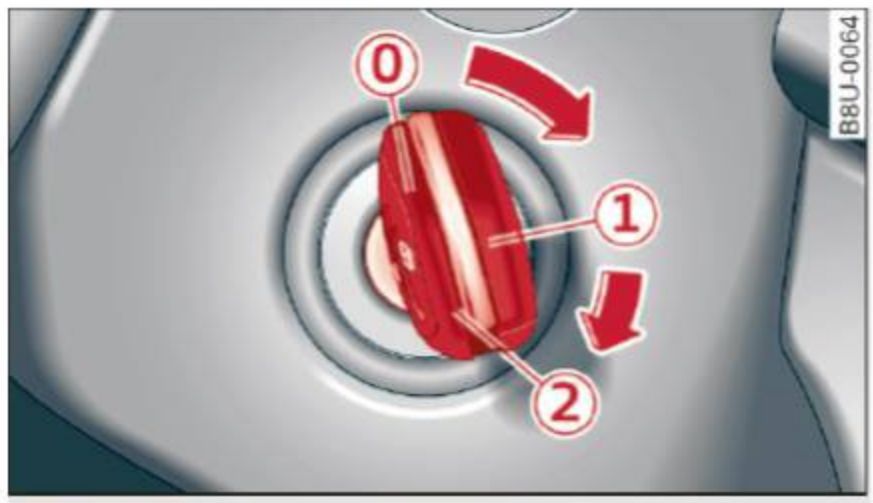


Fig. 78 Ignition lock: position of the ignition key

Switching the ignition on/off

- ▸ To switch the ignition on, turn the ignition key to position ①. ▶

▸ To switch the ignition off, turn the ignition key to position ⓪.

Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal and put the selector lever into P or N.
▸ Turn the key to position ②. The ignition key automatically returns to position ①. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure and repeat after 30 seconds. To restart the engine, turn the ignition key back to position ⓪.

WARNING

– Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
– Never remove the ignition key from the ignition look while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the steering lock could suddenly engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load as long as the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.
– If it is difficult to turn the key to position ①, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly to release the steering wheel lock.

Stopping the engine

Applies to vehicles: with ignition lock

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Turn the key to position ⓪.

Engaging the steering lock

Requirement: the selector lever must be in P.

▸ Remove the ignition key in position ⓪ ⇨ *page 67, fig. 78* ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel until you hear the steering wheel lock.

The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake if necessary. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.
– The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense ▸

sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Starting and stopping the engine (vehicles with a convenience key)

Starting the engine

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.



Fig. 79 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Switching the ignition on/off

▸ Automatic transmission: to switch the ignition on or off, press the START ENGINE STOP button. Do not press the brake pedal while doing this.

Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal and put the selector lever into P or N ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure and repeat after 30 seconds.

WARNING

– Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces - danger of asphyxiation.
– Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– Never leave children or persons requiring assistance unattended in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote transmitter, preventing people from escaping from the vehicle on their own in the event of an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people inside the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load as long as the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions. ▶

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Select the P or N selector lever position.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 69, fig. 79*.

Engaging the steering lock

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off function

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving at speeds lower than 6 mph (10 km/h). To switch the engine off, press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row briefly or press and hold for longer than two seconds.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You must use more force to turn or brake if necessary. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.
– For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.
– The radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes even after you have turned off the engine and removed the ignition key. The radiator fan can also turn on again if the engine coolant heats up because of intense sunlight or heat build-up in the engine compartment.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off - there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

Other circumstances can cause the engine not to start, such as the battery in the remote control key has drained, there is interference with the key or there is a system malfunction.

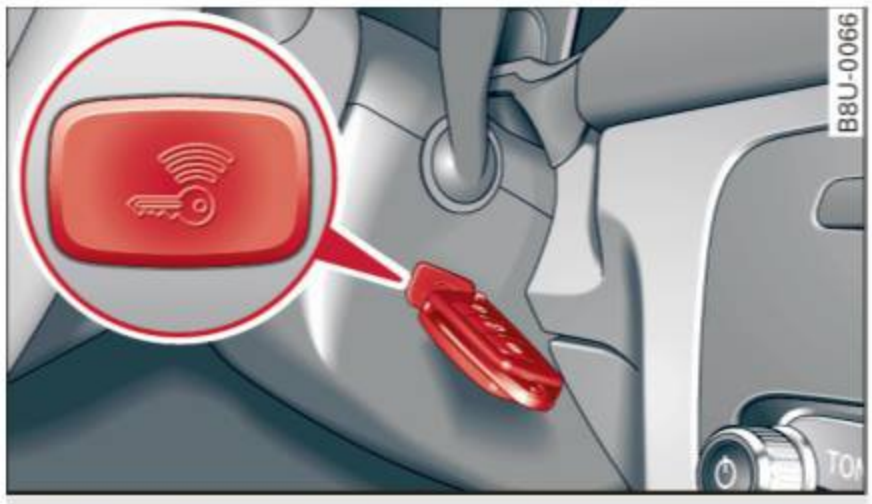


Fig. 80 Steering column/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

Requirement: the message **No key identified. See owner's manual.** must be displayed and the indicator light must be on.

▸ Hold the remote control key vertically in the location indicated ⇨ *fig. 80*.
▸ Press the brake pedal ⇨ *in Starting the engine on page 69*.
▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start. ▸

▸ Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Driver messages

Turn off ignition. Battery discharging

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not step on the brake pedal to start the engine on a vehicle with an automatic transmission.

Please engage N or P.

This message appears when starting or stopping the engine and N or P is not engaged. The engine will not start/stop.

Is key in the vehicle?

The indicator light turns on and this message appears if the convenience key* was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the convenience key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, vehicle can roll away. Doors can only be locked in P.

This message appears for safety reasons along with a warning sound if the selector lever is not engaged in P after switching the ignition off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

No key identified. See owner's manual.

This message appears if there is no convenience key* inside the vehicle or if the system does not recognize the key. The convenience key may not be recognized, for example, if it is covered by an object that *disrupts* the signal (such as a briefcase), or if the key battery is weak. Electronic devices such as cell phones can also interfere with the signal.

To still be able to start or stop the engine, refer to ⇨ *page 70*.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating

The electromechanical parking brake replaces the hand brake.



Fig. 81 Center console: parking brake

▸ To set the parking brake, pull on the Ⓟ switch Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 81*. The Ⓟ indicator lights in the button and PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) turn on in the instrument cluster display.
▸ To release the parking brake, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The Ⓟ indicator lights in the button and PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) in the display turn off.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

In addition to the normal functions of a traditional hand brake, the electromechanical parking brake provides various convenience and safety functions. ▸

When starting from a stop

– The integral hill start assist helps you when driving by automatically releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 72, Starting from a stop*.
– When starting on inclines, the hill start assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is only released if sufficient drive power has been built up at the wheels.

Emergency brake function

An emergency braking functions ensures that the vehicle can be slowed down even if the *normal* brakes fail ⇨ *page 73, Emergency braking function*.

WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running and a gear is selected. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately and could result in a crash.
– If the power supply fails, the released parking brake can no longer engage. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

– If the parking brake is set while the ignition is switched off, the Ⓟ indicator light in the button and PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) will turn off after a certain amount of time.
– Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals. Any noises associated with this are normal.
– If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Parking

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
▸ To set the parking brake, pull on the Ⓟ switch.
▸ Select the P position.
▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked, especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Starting from a stop

The start assist function ensures that the parking brake is released automatically upon starting.

Stopping and setting the parking brake

▸ To set the parking brake, pull on the Ⓟ switch.

Starting and automatically releasing the parking brake

▸ When you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, the parking brake can be applied. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, ▶

the parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle starts to move.

Starting on hills

When starting on inclines, the hill start assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is only released if sufficient drive power has been built up at the wheels.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened and the driver's door is locked.

Starting to drive with a trailer

To prevent rolling back unintentionally on an incline, do the following:

- ▸ Keep pulling the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake stays applied and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- ▸ You can release the Ⓟ switch once you are sure that you are transferring enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Depending on the weight of the rig (vehicle and trailer) and the severity of the incline, you may roll backwards as you start.

Hill hold

Applies to vehicles: with Hill Hold

Hill hold makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: The driver's door must be closed, the seat belt must be buckled and the engine must be running.

The system is activated when the brake pedal is pressed **for a few seconds**.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting, the brake power is held for a brief moment after releasing the brake pedal. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

WARNING

- The intelligent technology of Hill Hold cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by Hill Hold should not cause you to take safety risks.
- Hill Hold cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- If you do not begin moving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle could begin to roll backward under certain circumstances. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
- If the engine “stalls”, press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally when starting in stop-and-go traffic, keep the brake pedal pressed for a few seconds before driving off.

Tips

You can find out if your vehicle is equipped with Hill Hold by checking at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Emergency braking function

This is used if the conventional brake system fails or locks up.

- ▸ To brake your vehicle using the parking brake in an emergency, pull the Ⓟ switch and keep it pulled.
- ▸ The braking stops as soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate.

If you pull the Ⓟ switch and hold it above a speed of about 5 mph (8 km/h), the emergency braking function is activated. The vehicle brakes at all four wheels by activating the braking hydraulics. The brake performance is similar to heavy braking. ⇨ ⚠

In order not to activate the emergency brake function by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. As soon as ▶

the Ⓟ switch is released, or the accelerator pedal is depressed, emergency braking stops.

WARNING

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to break away, which increases the risk of an accident.

Speed warning system

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. You will hear a warning tone when your speed exceeds the stored value by approximately 3 mph (3 km/h). The indicator light MPH (USA models) / Km/h (Canada models) and the **Speed limit warning exceeded.** message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The MPH / Km/h indicator light turns off when the speed decreases below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Setting the threshold

Applies to vehicles: with speed warning system

You can set, change and delete the warning threshold in the Infotainment system.

- Select: CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Speed warning**.

You can set any threshold between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 150 mph (240 km/h). Settings can each be adjusted in increments of 5 mph (10 km/h).

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).



Fig. 82 Lever: cruise control system

- To switch the cruise control on, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 82*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button (A). The indicator light CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) turns on in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles. ▶

– For reasons of safety, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning) - you could have an accident.
– Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.

Tips

– The cruise control system is ideal for stretches with speed limits. The driver is responsible for adhering to the correct speed.
– The cruise control remains active when shifting gears.

Changing speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed in increments, push the lever toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 74, fig. 82*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes, the cruise control system turns off temporarily. The CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the stored speed is retained.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

You can preselect your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 74, fig. 82*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed, push the lever toward ⊕/⊖.
- ▸ To store the speed displayed, release the lever.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the desired speed before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward ①.

Switching off

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

Temporary deactivation

- ▸ Press the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever into position ② (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 74, fig. 82*.

Switching off completely

- ▸ Press the lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be retained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever into position ①.

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

WARNING

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you risk an accident.

Audi side assist

Side assist

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

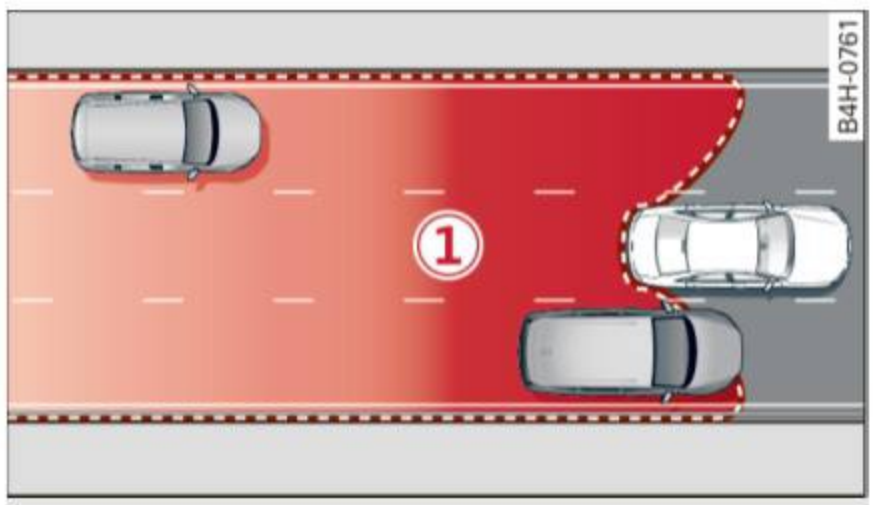


Fig. 83 Sensor detection range



Fig. 84 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 83*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 84* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If you activate the turn signal, side assist *warns* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the respective mirror blinks brightly. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the rearview mirror and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 77*.

Tips

- You can adjust the brightness of the display in the rearview mirror ② ⇨ *page 78*.
- Please refer to the instructions for trailer mode in ⇨ *page 77*.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

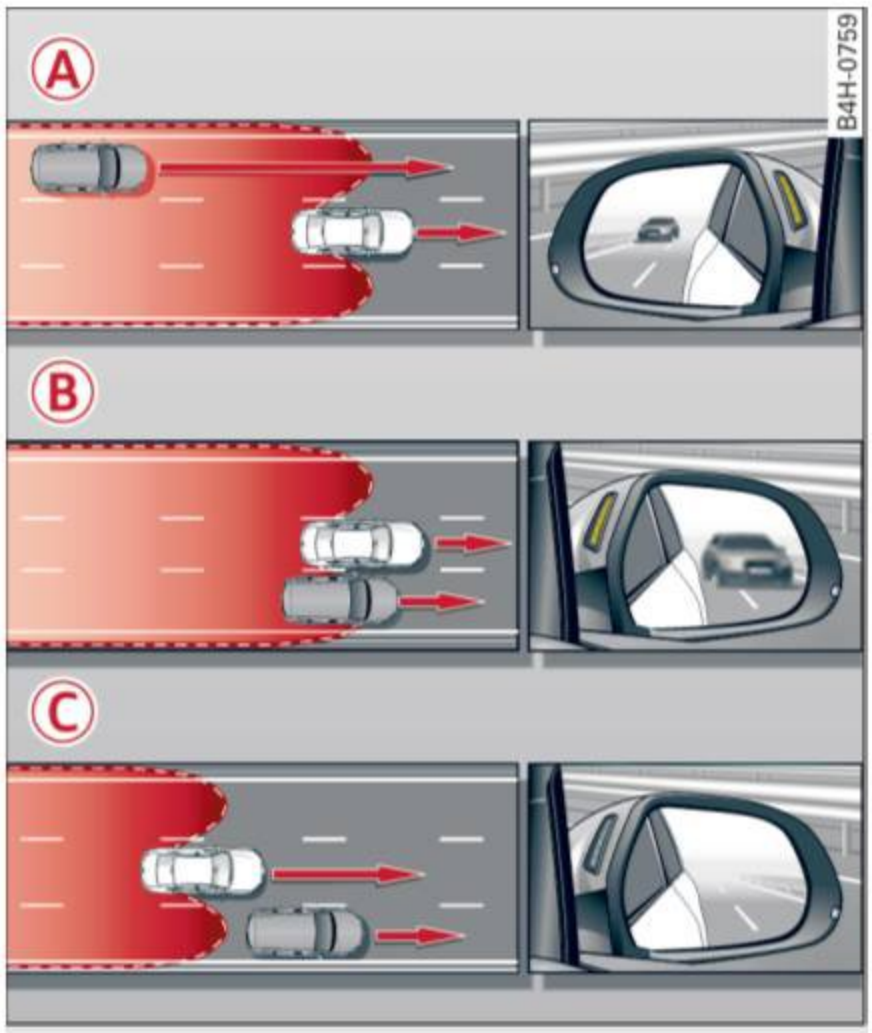


Fig. 85 Driving situations



Fig. 86 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Ⓐ Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Ⓑ Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

Ⓒ Vehicles left behind

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

- If the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected the vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
- If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
- If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
- In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 86* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because this will affect the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 168*.

WARNING

- Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
- Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:

- Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.
- Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.

– Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!
– Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – if vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – in poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – on very wide lanes, in tight curves or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can affect the system. Have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be misinterpreted.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 235*.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist



Fig. 87 Driver's door: side assist button

▸ Press the ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 77* button to switch the system on and off. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the display is already set to the minimum or maximum level by the automatic adjustment. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view forward. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage adjustment. ▶

Tips

– Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist: Unavailable. Sensor view

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 77, fig. 86*.

Audi side assist: Unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on temporarily because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it is switched off. The sensors have been displaced or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

162.561.8U0.21

Audi drive select

Drive settings

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select from three modes: **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** using the drive select button in the center console or by using the Infotainment system* to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode, for example.

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

The following systems, among other things, are influenced by drive select:

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher RPMs.

Adaptive dampers*

The adaptive dampers use sensors to record information regarding steering movements, braking and acceleration operations by the driver, road surface, driving speed, and load. With drive select you can adjust the adaptive dampers to sporty (dynamic), comfortable (comfort) or balanced (auto).

Steering

The steering adapts in terms of steering assistance. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. In contrast, dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Cornering light*

The cornering light adapts to driving on curves. The pivoting action and the lighting are also adapted to the mode.

Tips

Selecting the **Dynamic** mode allows for sporty gear shifting. The S shift setting is automatically engaged.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to vehicles: with Audi drive select

You can select between **Comfort**, **Auto** *and* **Dynamic**.



Fig. 88 Center console: drive select button

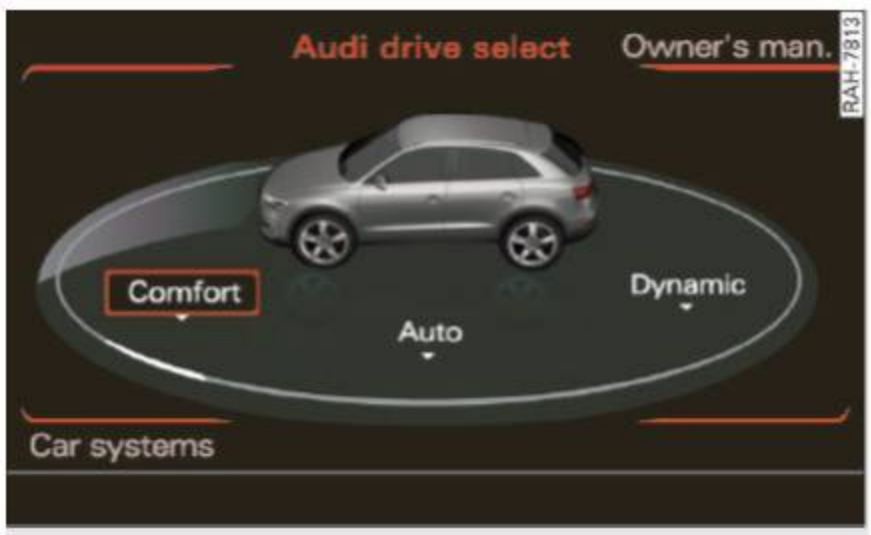


Fig. 89 Infotainment system: drive select

- ▸ To set the mode, press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed in the instrument cluster. Or
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system*: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto** or **Dynamic**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for every day use. ▶

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Automatic transmission

tiptronic

Introduction

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. The transmission upshifts or downshifts automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 85*.

In the tiptronic transmission, power is transferred by a torque converter.

Selecting a selector lever position



Fig. 90 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The instrument cluster display shows the current selector lever position and current gear ⇨ *fig. 90*.

P - Park

The wheels are locked in this position. Only shift into park when the vehicle is stationary ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 84*. To engage the P selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the P position.

You can only shift out of park when the engine is running and you are pressing the brake pedal. To release the parking lock. press the button on the selector lever and select the desired position.

R – Reverse

The reverse gear is engaged in this position. Only select reverse when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 84*. To engage the R selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever, press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the R position.

The reverse lights turn on when you select the R selector lever position while the engine is running.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 84*. To engage the N selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the N position.

To move from selector lever position out of N, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

Depending on the selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position N to D/S, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary. ▶

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving tips on page 84*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter.

Tips

- If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D or S.
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 86*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

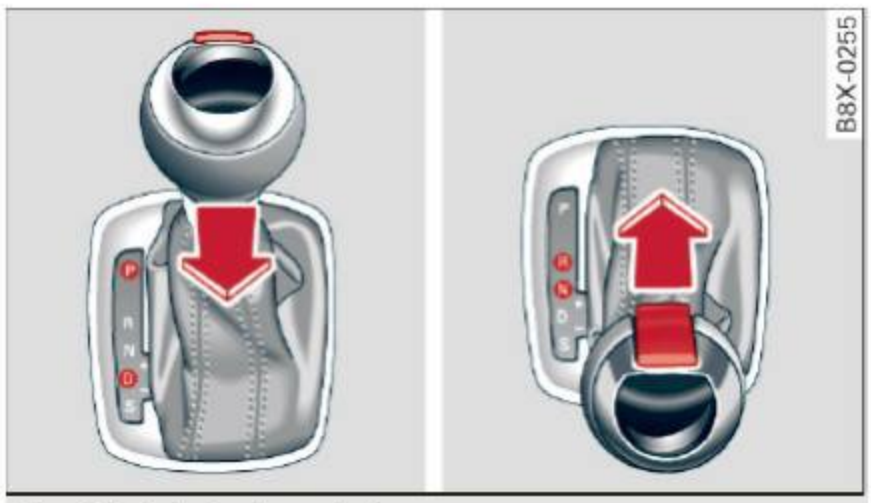


Fig. 91 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal *and* hold the lock button at the same time ⇨ *fig. 91*.
- ▸ Move the selector lever into the desired position. The engaged selector lever position is shown in the shift gate.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. The remove it from these positions, the driver must press the brake pedal and press the lock button at the same time. The following message appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

Press brake to change gear while stationary.

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer than 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

Lock button

The lock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever unintentionally while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the lock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 91*.

Driving tips

Starting the engine

- ▸ The selector lever must be in the P or the N position.

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the button on the selector lever and select the D, S or R selector lever position ⇨ *page 82*.
- ▸ Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping temporarily

- ▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, for example at a traffic light. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Shift to P and turn off ignition, otherwise vehicle can roll away** appears.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ To engage the P selector lever position, press the button on the selector lever and shift into the P position ⇨ *page 82*.

Stopping on an incline

- ▸ *Always* press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place and prevent it from "rolling back" ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to prevent the vehicle from "rolling back" when a gear is engaged by increasing the engine speed ⇨ (!).

Starting on a hill

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Select the D position.
- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal carefully. If your safety belt is fastened, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to adjust the gears to the driving conditions by hand ⇨ *page 85*.

On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position ⇨ *page 72*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the P position.

⚠ WARNING

- – The vehicle can also roll when the engine is stopped.
- – Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.
- – Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, activate the parking brake and move the selector lever to P.
- – Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in D/S or R or "tiptronic" mode is selected.
- – Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- – Never shift into R or P while driving.
- – Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
- – Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving down a hill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- – To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when stopping on inclines, always hold it in place with the brake pedal or parking brake.
- – Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. An indicator lamp illuminates and a driver message appears ⇨ *page 86* when the clutch is overloaded.
- – If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in P with the parking brake set ▸

⇨ *page 177*. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.

Note

– When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the automatic transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in N position will damage the automatic transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances.
– The transmission can overheat and be damaged under certain driving and traffic conditions such as frequent starts, creeping for a long time, or stop-and-go traffic. When the indicator light turns on, stop the vehicle at the next opportunity and let the transmission cool down ⇨ *page 86*.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened and the driver's door is locked.

Hill descent control

Hill descent control assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the incline. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brake pedal.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic allow the driver to shift the gears manually.



Fig. 92 Center console: manual shifting with the selector lever



Fig. 93 Steering wheel: manual shifting with the shift paddles*

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

- To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the D/S setting to the right. As soon as the transmission is switched, the M transmission setting will appear in the instrument cluster display.
- To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 92*.
- To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever back ⊖.

Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the D, S or M selector lever positions.

- To shift up one gear, tap the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 93*.
- To shift down one gear, tap the ⊖ shift paddle.
- If you do not press a shift button within a short time while in the D/S position, the transmission will return to automatic mode. To keep shifting using the shift buttons, move the selector lever to the right out of the D/S position.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Tips

– When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
– When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
– Tiptronic is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point (called kick-down), the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission overheating! Please stop the vehicle!

The transmission is too hot and can become damaged. Stop and let the transmission cool with the engine running (at idle) in the P selector lever position. Then the indicator light and the message turn off, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If the indicator light and the driver message do not turn off, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Selector lever emergency release

In order to tow a vehicle due to power failure, the selector lever emergency release must be activated.



Fig. 94 Selector lever: removing the cover



Fig. 95 Selector lever: emergency release

The emergency release mechanism is located in the right area under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. We recommend contacting an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance, if necessary.

A maintenance tool from the vehicle tool kit must be used to release ⇨ *page 211*. ▶

Preparations

- ▸ To prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally, set the parking brake Ⓟ or press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the flat side of the maintenance tool sideways in the slot near the shift cover and pry off the shift cover ⇨ *fig. 94*.
- ▸ Pull the frame and the cover upward. You can fold the cover up over the shifter knob.

Selector lever emergency release

- ▸ Press and hold the yellow release button ⇨ *fig. 95*.
- ▸ Press the button on the selector lever and move the lever into N position.
- ▸ Clip the frame to the cover again.

⚠ WARNING

If you release the parking lock using the emergency release, secure your vehicle with the parking brake or the brake pedal if the parking brake is not working. The vehicle can roll away if it is not secured and cause a crash.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to vehicles: with rear parking system/parking system plus/rear view camera

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **rear parking system** is an audible parking aid that warns you of obstacles *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 88*.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 89*.

The **rear view camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. This display assists you when you are cross or parallel parking ⇨ *page 90*. In addition, you are assisted by the functions from the parking system plus ⇨ *page 89*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and for all other maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking systems may become impaired as a result. Have your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 168*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with specific surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow.
- If you continue driving closer to a low-lying object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or for long grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources e.g. from cleaning vehicles.
  - heavy rain, snow or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 93*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer ⇨ *page 94*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.

Rear parking system

Description

Applies to vehicles: with rear parking system

The rear parking system is an audible parking aid.

There is a sensor in the rear bumper cover. If these detect an obstacle, audible signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may ▶

impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 168*.

The range at which the sensors begin to measure is approximately:

rear	side	3 ft. (0.90 m)
	center	5.2 ft. (1.60 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue backing up ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 88*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 88*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this is not apply in the continuous tone range).

The parking system activates automatically when the reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief confirmation tone.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus

The parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

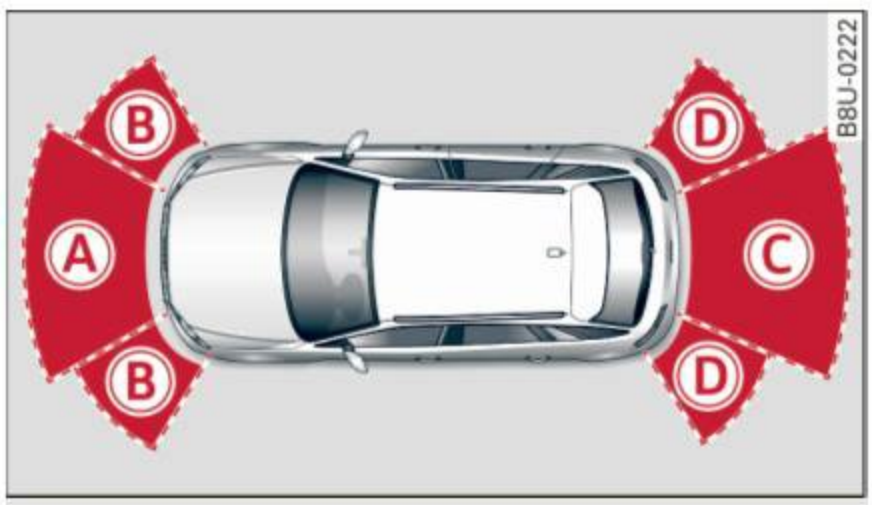


Fig. 96 Illustration:

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 168*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft. (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft. (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft. (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft. (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 88*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 88*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this is not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus



Fig. 97 Center console: parking system button



Fig. 98 Infotainment: visual distance display

Switching on

▸ Shift into reverse, or ▶

- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 97*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle help you determine the distance between you and an obstacle ⇨ *fig. 98*. The red lines* mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 88*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 88*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

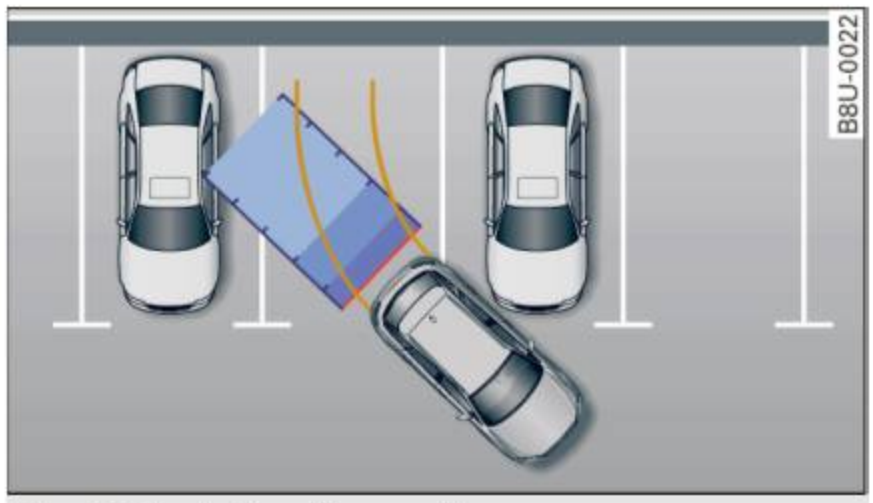


Fig. 99 Illustration: Cross parking

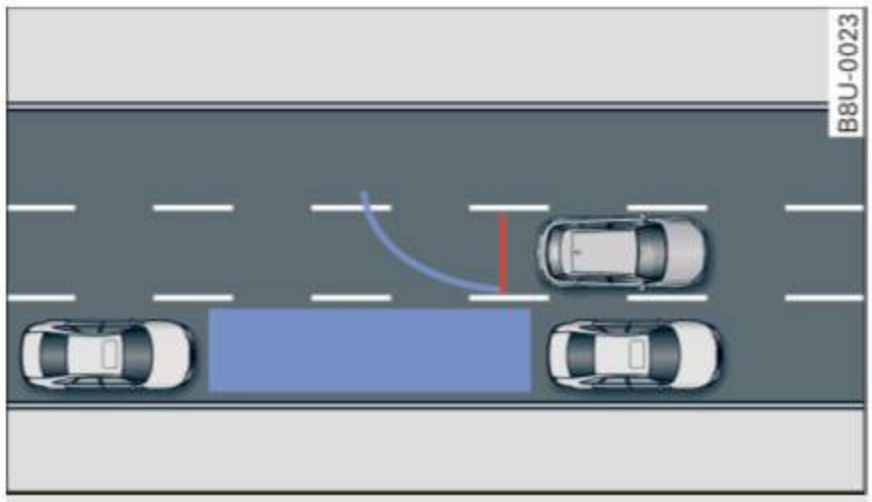


Fig. 100 Illustration: parallel parking

In addition to parking system plus ⇨ *page 89*, this parking system also has a rearview camera.

You can use *cross parking* for example, to park in a parking space or in a garage ⇨ *fig. 99*. You can use *parallel parking* if you would like to park on the side of the road ⇨ *fig. 100*.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

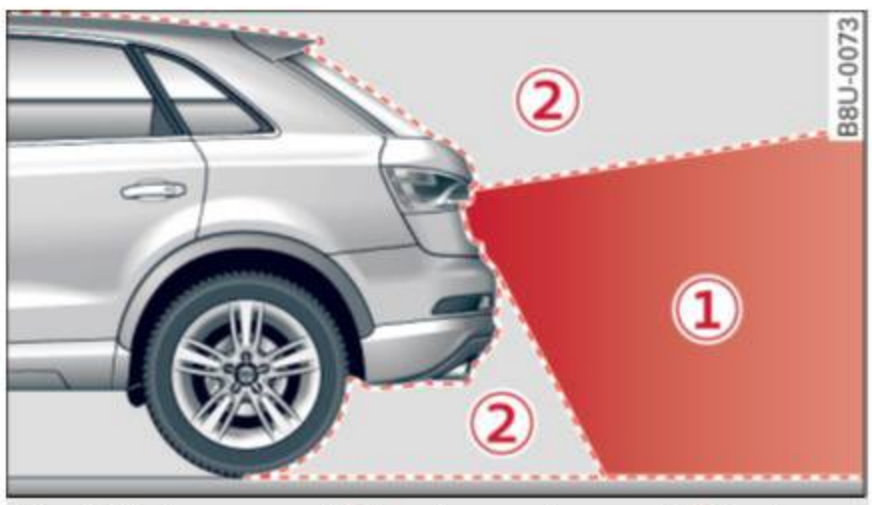


Fig. 101 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 102 Rear lid: Location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 102* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this ▶

can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 168*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 101*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces diminishes if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 80*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 88*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example, after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens or if there is a defect.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  - For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the help lines in this case.
  - If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  - If driven toward protruding objects.
  - If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 88*.
- The orange colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path depending on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

Switching on

- ▸ Shift into reverse, or
- ▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 89, fig. 97*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching between the rearview camera and optical display

- ▸ Press the **Graphic** control button ⑤ ⇨ *page 92, fig. 103* to see the optical display.
- ▸ Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image.

Switching off

- ▸ Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- ▸ press the P button, or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.

Cross parking

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

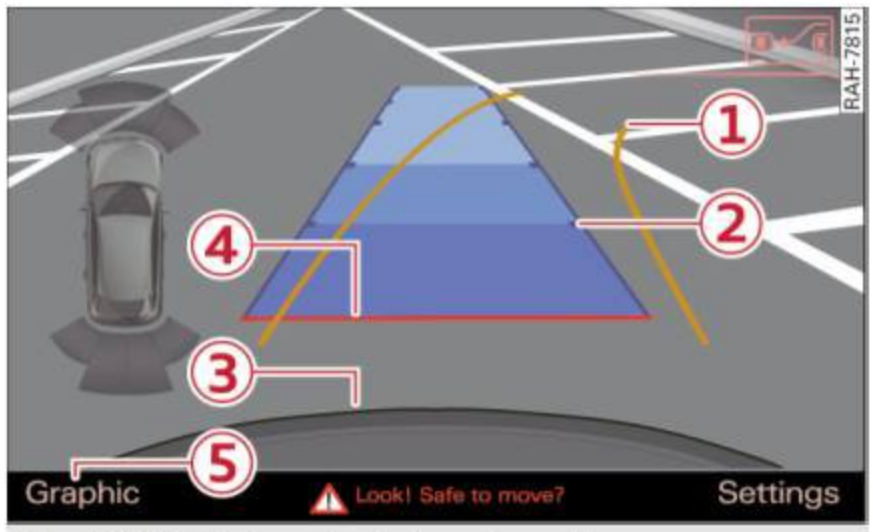


Fig. 103 Infotainment: aiming at a parking space

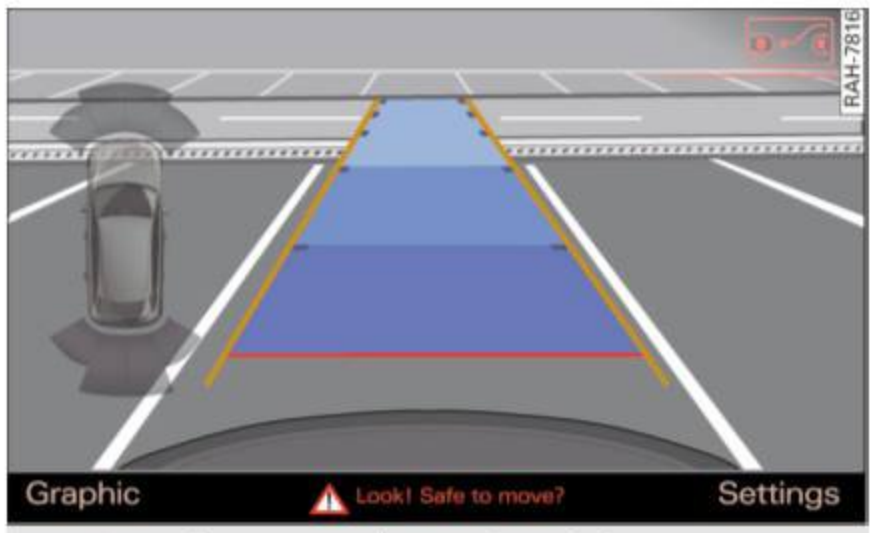


Fig. 104 Infotainment: aligning the vehicle

- ▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear.
- ▸ The orange colored orientation lines (1) show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 103*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft. (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft. (5 meters) to the rear.
- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 91*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 91*. (3) marks the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line (4) borders an object.

Parallel parking

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

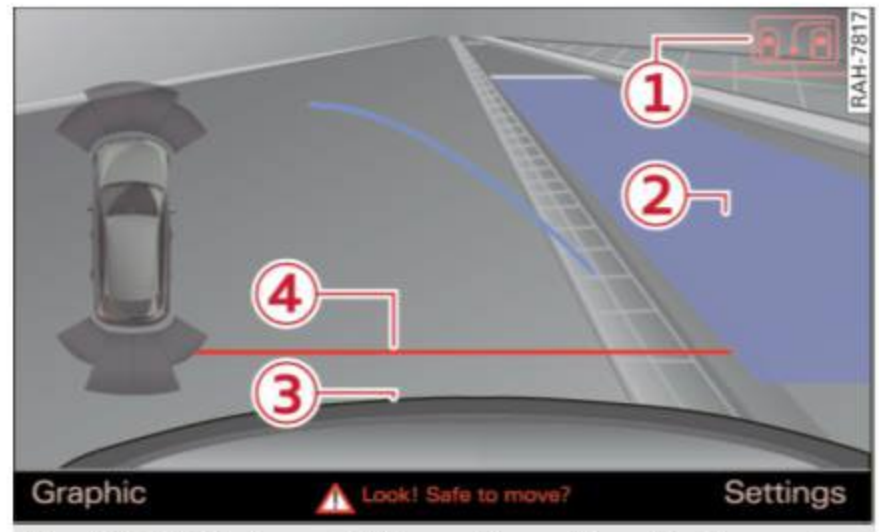


Fig. 105 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

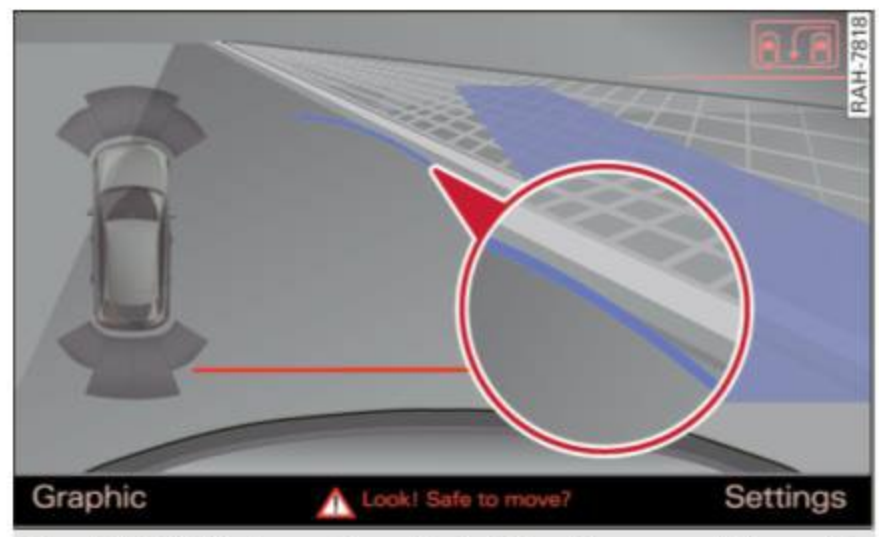


Fig. 106 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to "Information for parking next to obstacles" ⇨ *page 93*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).
- ▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **Cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit (1) ⇨ *fig. 105*. The **Parallel parking** display is shown. ▶

- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area (2) borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 91*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 91*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft. (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back up into the parking spot. As soon as the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 106* is near the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 91*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 91*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 91*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 91*. (3) marks the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line (4) borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue surface so that there is sufficient space from the obstacle. The surface must not be touching. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *fig. 106* must **not** touch the obstacle and should have sufficient room.

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid**.

Display

On* - An optical display is shown for the parking system plus, a rearview camera image is shown for parking system plus with rearview camera*.

Off - When the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.

Warning tones

Front volume - Volume for the front area

Rear volume - Volume for the rear area

Front frequency - Frequency for the front area

Rear frequency - Frequency for the rear area

Entertainment volume - When the parking system is turned on, the volume of the audio/video source is lowered.

The newly adjusted value is given briefly from the corresponding signal generator.

Tips

- – The warning tones can also be adjusted directly from the visual display or the rearview camera image*. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
- – Changed settings are activated when the parking system is switched on again.
- – The settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Error messages

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous ▸

alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

If a sensor is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓐ and Ⓑ are shown ⇨ *page 89, fig. 96*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓒ and Ⓓ are shown.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer hitch

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus with rearview camera

For vehicles using the trailer socket, the parking system rear sensors do not turn on when you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P button. This results in the following restrictions.

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to the trailer towing mode. The rearview camera image will not show the orientation lines and the blue surfaces.

Tips

Trailer hitches that are not installed at the factory may cause the parking system to malfunction or they may restrict its function.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- belt force limiters for the front seats,
- belt pretensioners for the seats,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seats,
- side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 100*, ⇨ *page 54*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 104*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ▸ ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ▸ Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- ▸ Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

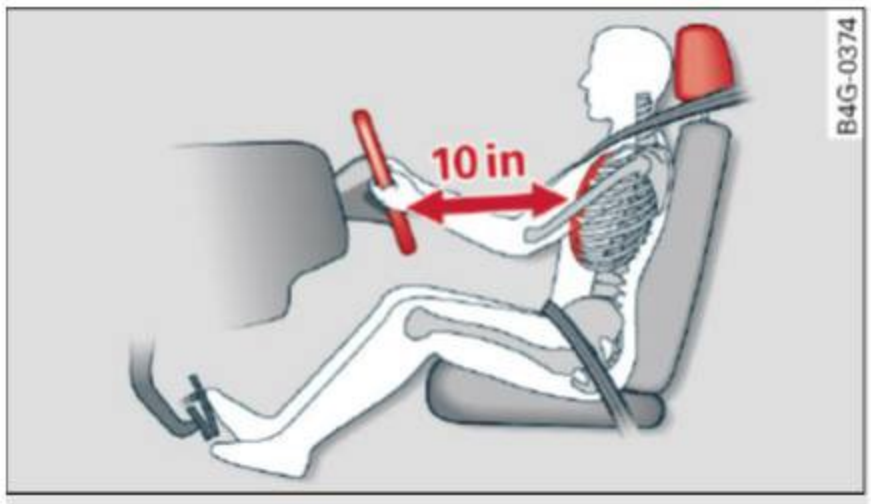


Fig. 107 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 107*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealer about adaptive equipment.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- ▸ Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 107*.
- ▸ Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times. ▶

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 132*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 112*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 51*.
- Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 107*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.

– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child safety seats ⇨ *page 132*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 112*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

▸ Make sure that the seatback is securely latched in the upright position ⇨ *page 59*.
▸ If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch ⇨ *page 52*.
▸ Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 107*.
▸ Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 132*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

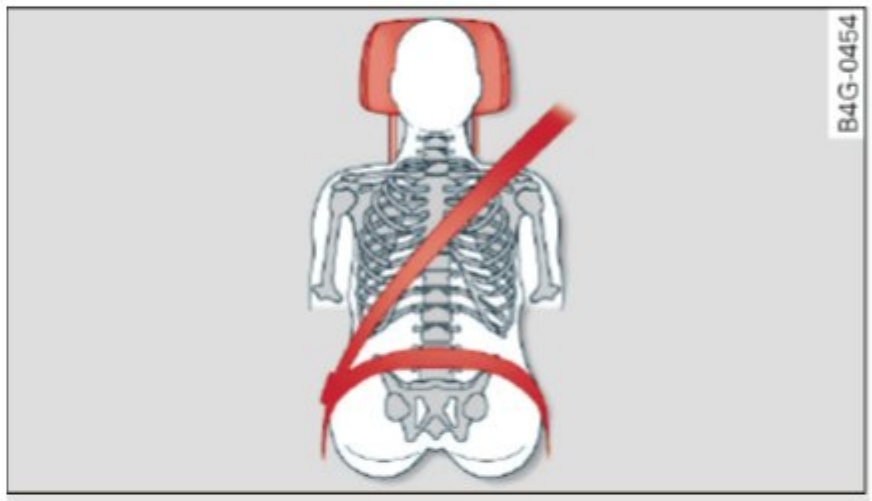


Fig. 108 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

▸ Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 108*.
▸ If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 51*.

WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury: ▸

– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
– Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
– Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
– Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
– Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 132*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the rear seat
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.
– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury. ▶

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi. Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.
– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

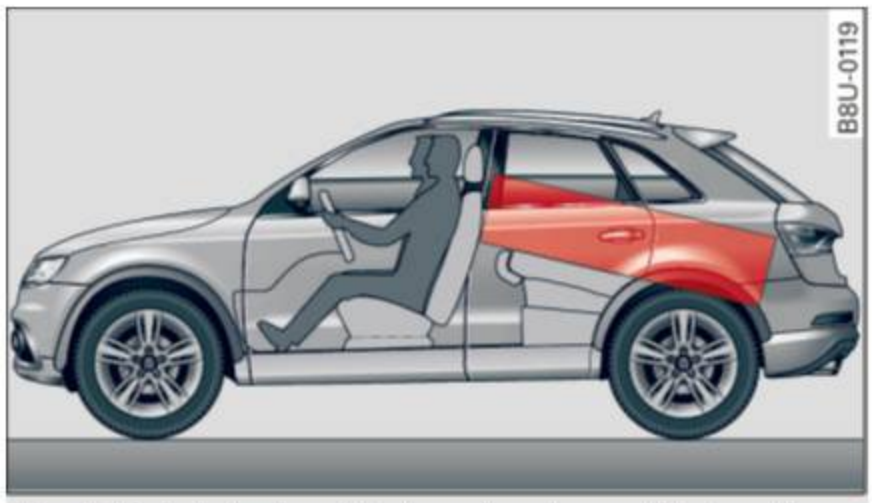


Fig. 109 Safe load positioning: place heavy objects as low and as far forward as possible.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as low and as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 109*.
▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 60*.
▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury: ▸

– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down eyelets and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:
– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 95*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.
– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the Panoramic sliding sunroof*,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the Panoramic sliding sunroof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.
– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 201*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 100, Loading the luggage compartment.* ▶

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
- When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
- Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov ▶

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

162.561.8U0.21

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 110 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.

▸

– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

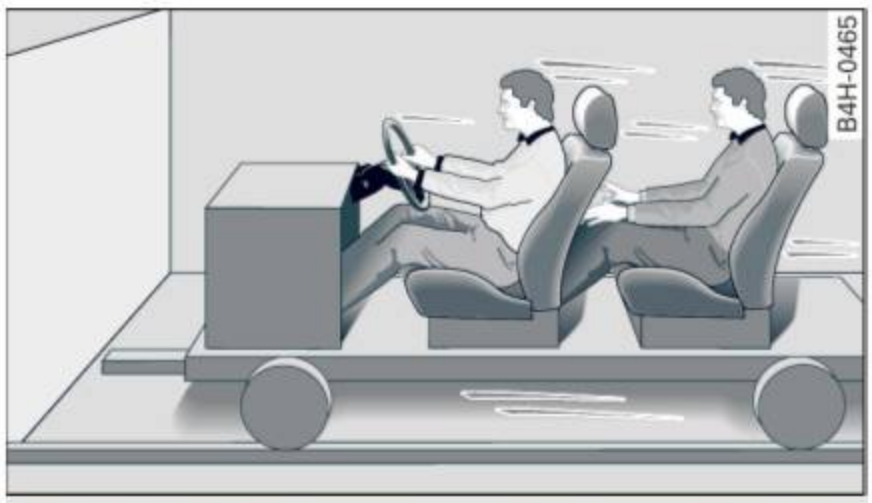


Fig. 111 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 112 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 111*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 112*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 113 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 114 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, ▶

instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 113*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 114*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 115 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Internal cleaning on page 170*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!



Fig. 116 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *fig. 116*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle. ▶

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 16*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child safety seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 141*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 108, Safety belt position*.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child safety seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 143*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

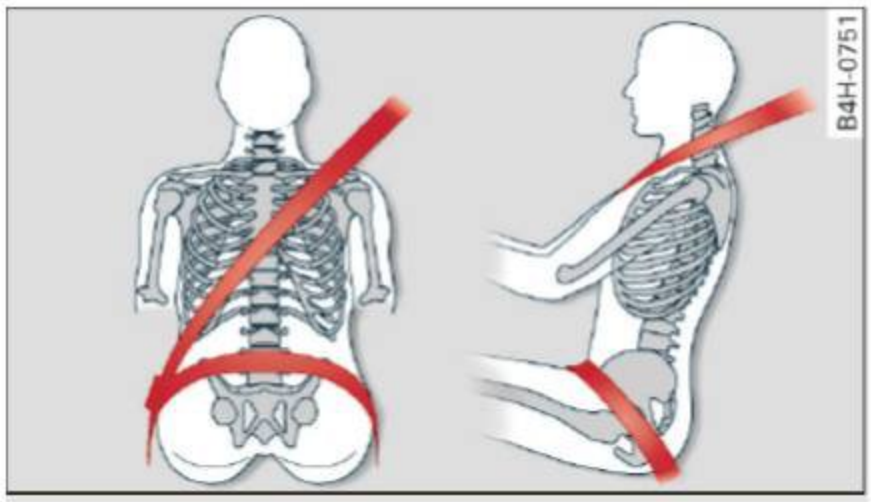


Fig. 117 Safety belt position

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- height-adjustable front seats.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 117*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇨ *fig. 117*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body ▶

from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 106*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 118 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 108*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 118*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 107, fig. 116*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.
– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 108*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

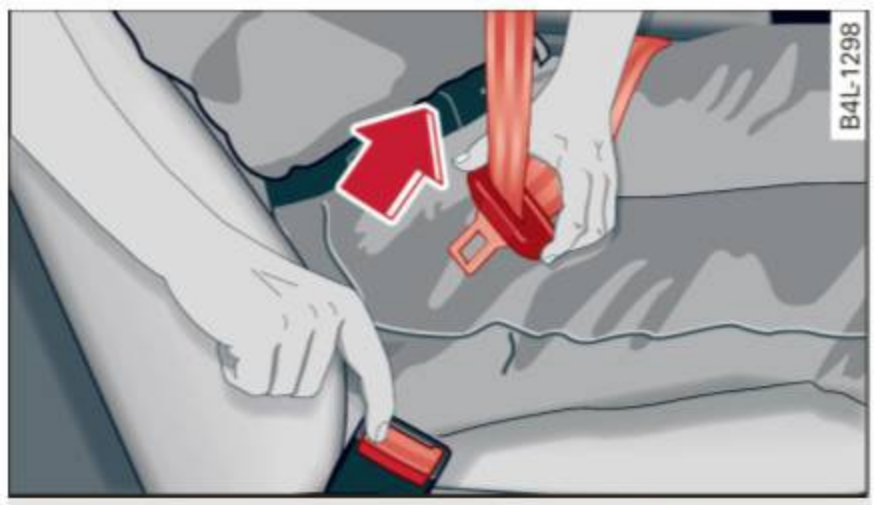


Fig. 119 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 119*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

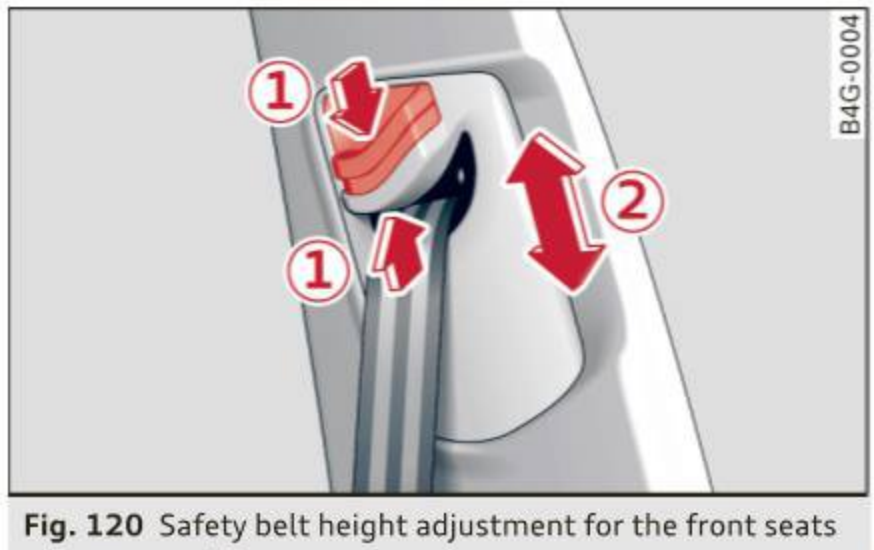


Fig. 120 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 108*.

- ▸ *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 120* ②, or
- ▸ *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- ▸ Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 106*.

ⓘ Tips

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 106*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 111*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

ⓘ Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seatback that has been folded forward.

ⓘ Tips

The safety belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

- The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
- When the safety belt pretensioners are activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. An authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
- Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

- The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
- Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
- For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

162.561.8U0.21

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 96*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 50*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 106*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 132*.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 96, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 50*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 132*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

Contact your authorized Audi dealer, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in roll-overs.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 104*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 107, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 96*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 132*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for "suppression" for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇨ *page 122, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on). If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 134*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 96, Proper seating position for the driver*.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 122, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child safety seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly ▶

recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 122, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 121 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 122 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 121* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 122*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

– Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
– Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
– Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the “low risk” option under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the typical one-year old child is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 134, Child restraints and Advanced Airbags*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 134*,
– weight less than a threshold level stored in the control unit is detected on the front passenger seat.

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child safety seats listed ⇨ *page 134*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

The front airbag on the passenger side may *not* deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not illuminate and stay lit) if: ▶

– a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat
– a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. ⇨ *page 122*

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 112*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the back seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in ▶

greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 122*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 122, fig. 124* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor below the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit "decide" whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child ▶

restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if one of the child safety seats that has been certified under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been recognized on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.
– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 112*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 123 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag, ▶

– and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 113*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.

▶

162.561.8U0.21

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light :

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 124 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 124*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. Each time you turn on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will flash for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on** if the ignition is on and

– a car bed has been installed on the front seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇨ *page 141*.
– make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child safety seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
– make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seatback and forth;
– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that: ▶

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇨ *page 96, Correct passenger seating positions*,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,
– a safety belt extender has not been left in the safety belt latch for the front passenger seat.

In addition to the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel, the message **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** or **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** will briefly appear in the instrument cluster display. This is to inform the driver of the current front passenger airbag status.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, in a rearward-facing child safety seat or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat. ▶

Tips

If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cupholders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has the technical information, training and special equipment necessary.
- The airbag system can be deployed only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar ▶

with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors in the buckle to send the wrong information to the electronic control module and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

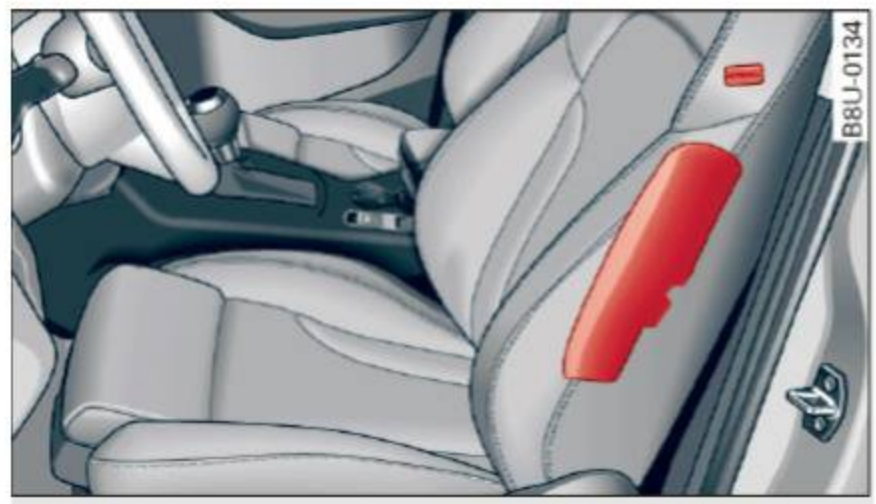


Fig. 125 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 125* facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, ▶

for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 128, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 104, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is turned off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 128*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 126 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 126*. ▶

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
  - Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cupholders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
  - Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
  - Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
- Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way. ▶

– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
  – Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
  – Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
  – Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
  – Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
  – Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 127 Side curtain system, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 127*. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 130, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 104, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection. ▶

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is turned off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 50, Front seats*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 16* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Fig. 128 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 128*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 132*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbags inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference. Unsuitable accessories fitted inside the expansion range of a head airbag can dangerously interfere with its function. A deploying head airbag develops enough force to catapult any piece of add-on component out of its path of inflation and into the passenger compartment. An occupant hit by such a projectile can suffer serious injury or death ⇨ *page 234, Technical Modifications*.
- Do not swivel the sun visors to the side if you have any objects clipped onto them (for example pens). If the airbag should deploy, you could be injured by these objects.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Never use hangers to hang clothing from the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only Audi roll-up sunscreens may be used ⇨ *page 234, Additional accessories and parts replacement*.
- Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the side curtain airbags can help provide protection.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 105, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 135, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in ▶

exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child safety seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its "footprint", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its "footprint" vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in ▶

the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old child, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide", whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off.

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different 'footprints,' the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999

Model	Manufactured on or after
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.

– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 137*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 141*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child safety seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 137*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.

– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).

– When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle. ▶

– Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
– Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.

– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
– Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
– The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
– The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 104, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 112, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.

▶

– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

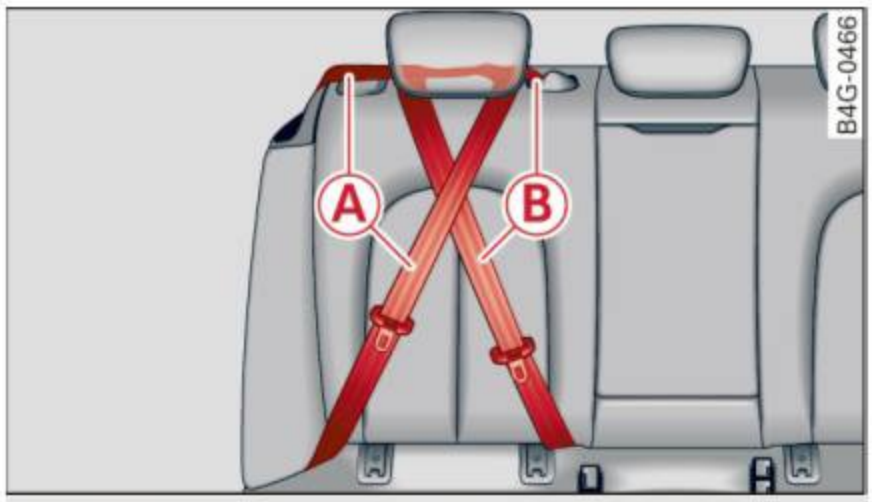


Fig. 129 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings Ⓐ and Ⓑ behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 129*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a “clicking” sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

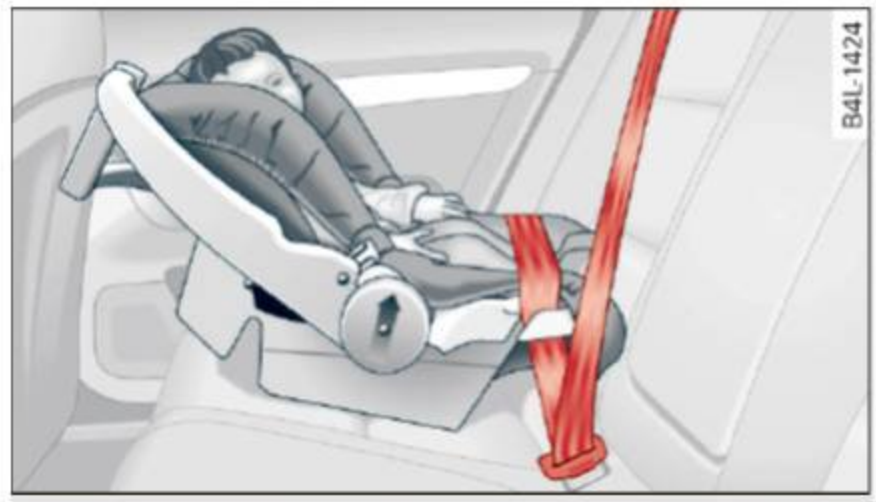


Fig. 130 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 141* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 137*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 130*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a ▶

child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 104, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 112, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 132, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

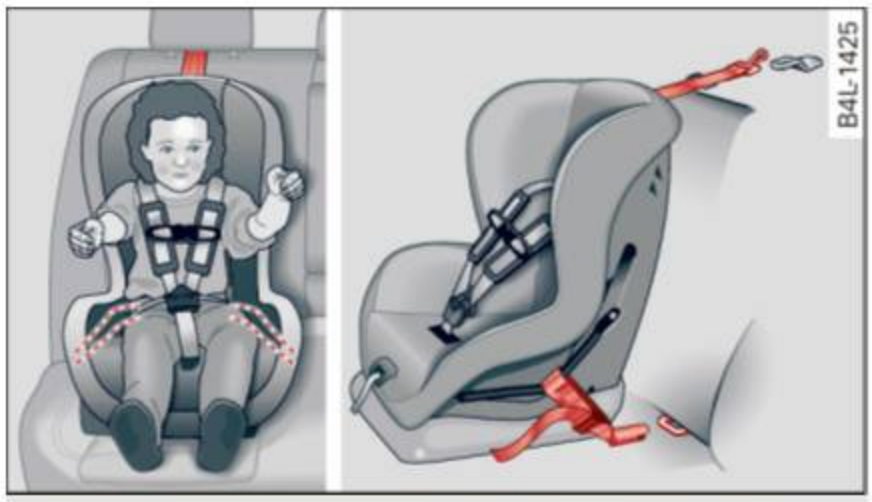


Fig. 131 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

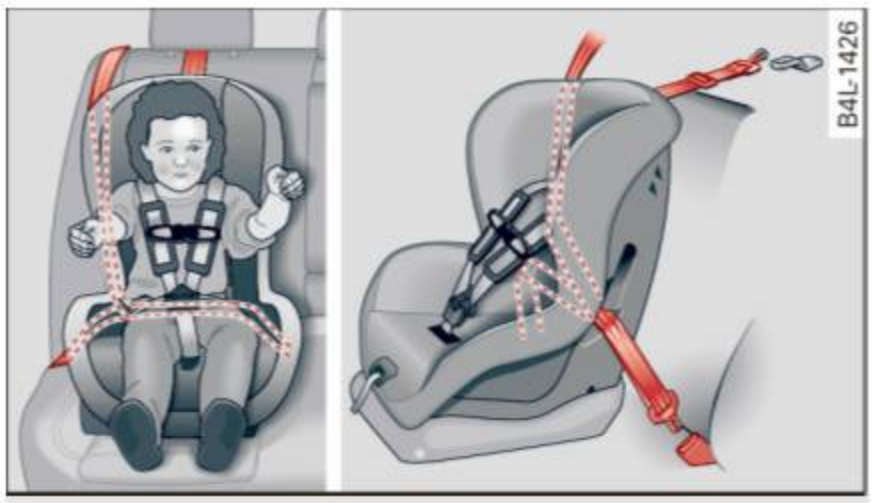


Fig. 132 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 141* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 141*.
- If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 147*.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 137*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg). ▶

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs. (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 131* and ⇨ *fig. 132*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 52*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 104, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 112, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 132, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

- Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
- Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the light does not stay on, perform the checks ⇨ *page 122, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 133 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 137*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs. or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's ▶

body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 104*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 52*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 122, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 104, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 112, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 132, Important information*.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. ▶

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 132*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 122, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel. ▶

– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash. ▶

– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 132*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 132*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 113, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or ▸

push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Location

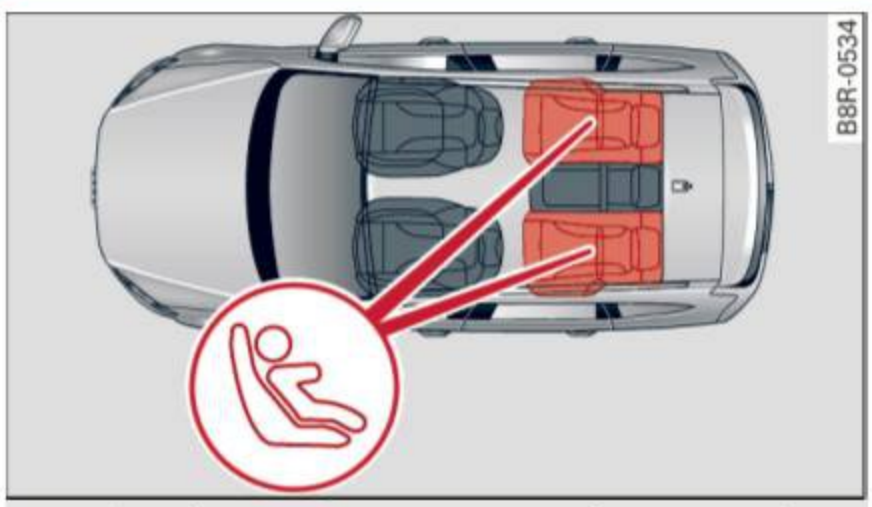


Fig. 134 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.



Fig. 135 Rear seats: lower anchorages, covers marked



Fig. 136 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 135* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 136*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that ▶

are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
– Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

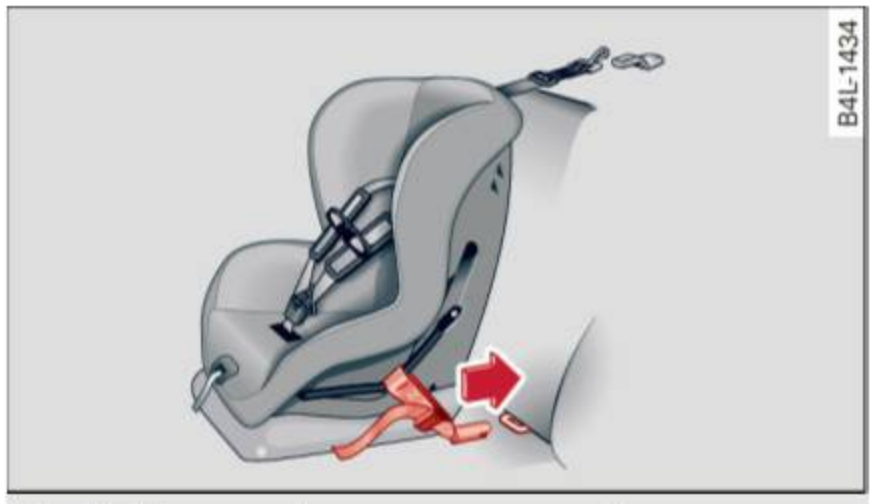


Fig. 137 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 137*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 132, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

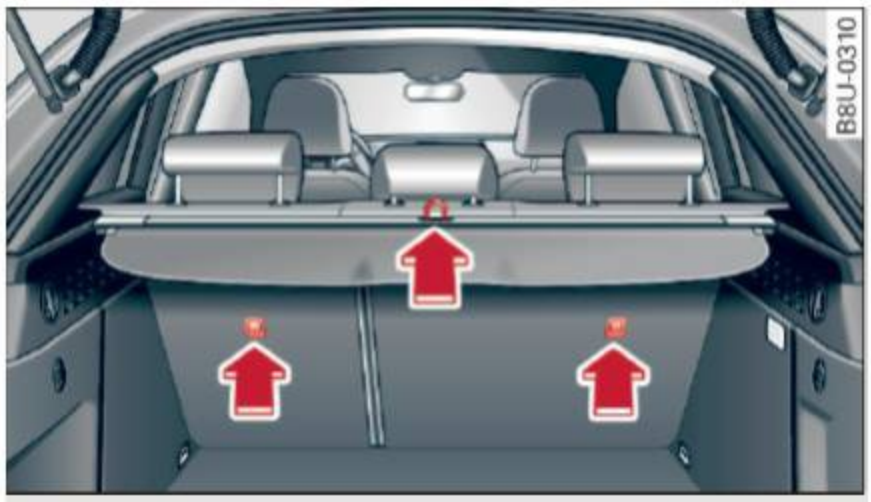


Fig. 138 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 138*.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.
- The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

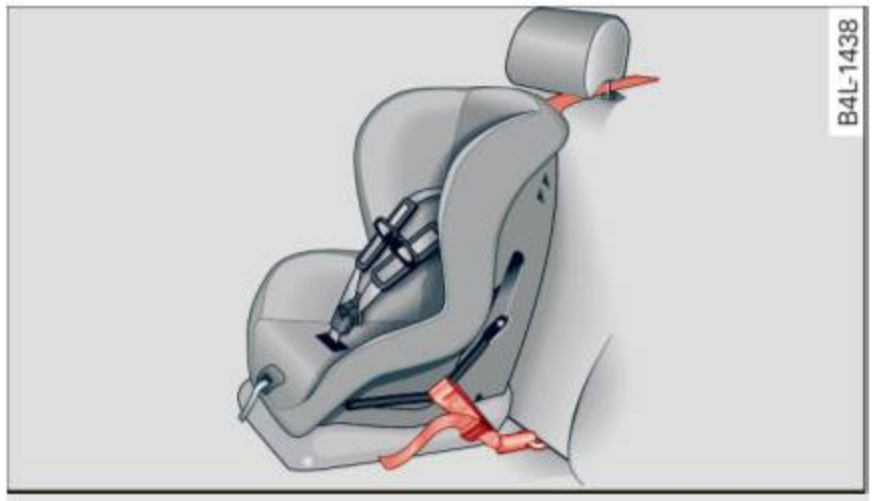


Fig. 139 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting



Fig. 140 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint and into the rear cargo area ⇨ *fig. 140* (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- ▸ Slide the tether strap hook over the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- – A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- – If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

162.561.8U0.21

Intelligent Technology

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

- unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and ▶

shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider and the "About Audi connect" tab in your vehicle's MMI: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control and helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels, and/or reducing engine power and providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course. The indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks when ESC is taking action to help you control the vehicle.

ESC has limitations. It is important to remember that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. It will not always be able to help out under all conditions you may come up against. For example, ESC may not always be able to help you master situations where there is a sudden change in the coefficient of friction of the road surface. When there is a section of dry road that is suddenly covered with water, slush or snow, ESC cannot perform the same way it would on the dry surface. If the vehicle hydroplanes (rides on a cushion of water instead of the road surface), ESC will not be able to help you steer the vehicle because contact with the pavement has been interrupted and the vehicle cannot be braked or steered. During fast cornering, particularly on winding roads, ESC cannot always deal as effectively with difficult driving situations than at lower speeds. When towing a trailer, ESC is not able to help you regain control as it would if you were not towing a trailer.

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. ESC cannot override the vehicle's physical limits, increase the available traction, or keep a vehicle on the road if road departure is a result of driver inattention. Instead, ESC improves the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and on the road during extreme maneuvers by using the driver's steering inputs to help keep the vehicle going in the intended direction. If you are traveling at a speed that causes you to run off the road before ESC can provide any assistance, you may not experience the benefits of ESC.

ESC is switched on all the time. In certain situations when you need less traction, you can switch off ASR by pressing the button ⇨ *page 152, fig. 141*. Be sure to switch ASR on again when you no longer need less traction.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up inclines.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL brakes wheels that are spinning and transfers the drive power to the other drive wheel or wheels if the vehicle is equipped with all wheel drive*). This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL ▶

will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The "Automatic post-collision braking system" can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of other collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

- the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
- the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
- the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

- The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits posed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
- Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
- Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

- ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
- You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on and off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 141 Center console: OFF button

The ESC is designed to function in levels. Depending on the level that is selected, the stabilization function of the ESC is limited or switched off. The amount of stabilization control will differ depending on the level.

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch offroad mode on to allow the wheels to spin:

- Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
- Driving in deep snow or on loose ground ▶

– Driving on rough terrain when much of the car's weight is lifted off the wheels (axle articulation)
– Driving downhill while braking on loose ground

For your safety, switch off the ESC offroad mode in advance.

ESC levels

	Offroad mode on	ESC/ASR off	Offroad mode off or ESC/ASR on
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The stabilization function is not available ⇨ ⚠. ESC and ASR are switched off.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the button briefly.	Press and hold the button longer than three seconds.	Press the button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	and ESC OFF turns on.	turns off or and ESC OFF turn off.
Driver messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Offroad Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): Off Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

WARNING

You should only switch offroad mode on or switch ESC/ASR off if your driving abilities and the traffic conditions permit. There is a risk of sliding.

– The stabilization function is limited when offroad mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.
– There is no vehicle stabilization when ESC/ASR are switched off.

Hill descent assist

Applies to vehicles: with hill descent assist

The hill descent assist makes it possible to drive down an incline at a constant speed.



Fig. 142 Center console: hill descent assist button

▸ To switch on the hill descent assist, press the button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 142*. The LED in the button turns on.
▸ Press the button again to switch it off. The LED in the button turns off.

Hill descent assist brakes all four wheels automatically in order to limit speed when driving either forward or reverse on hills with a grade up to approximately 50%. ▶

When the hill descent assist is on, the current driving speed, when your vehicle entered the incline is maintained. It is only possible to switch on the assist when driving slower than 37 mph (60 km/h). The assist works between approximately 2 and 19 mph (4 and 30 km/h). The driver can increase or decrease the vehicle speed within these limits by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

There must be however sufficient ground adhesion. The hill descent assist **cannot** do its job if the incline is icy or if the incline ground is loose ⇨ ⚠.

Active assistance at a specific speed up to about 19 mph (30 km/h) is shown in the instrument cluster through a blinking indicator light. The indicator light shines continuously when in the ready mode.

The system does not work at speeds between 19 and 37 mph (30 and 60 km/h). The system is then in the ready-mode. This is shown through the LED turned on in the button. The system automatically switched off when you drive faster than 37 mph (60 km/h). The LED will also go out in this scenario.

Hill descent assist is automatically activated under the following conditions:

– The LED in the button turns on,
– the vehicle speed is lower than 19 mph (30 km/h),
– the incline angle is at least around 10%.

⚠ WARNING

– Always adapt your speed to the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– The hill descent assist system cannot overcome the laws of physics. Your driving style must always be adapted to the current road and traffic conditions.
– The hill descent assist may not be able to hold your vehicle at a constant speed under all conditions while driving on an incline (for example if ground under the vehicle is loose).

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be "broken in" first ⇨ ⚠. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇨ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water or road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be "dried" first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action which is not felt by the driver happens at regular ▶

intervals and facilitates a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and brake pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied ⇨ ⚠.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

if you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* gotten larger, then a brake circuit may have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running ⇨ ⚠.

Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇨ *page 213, Replacing wheels*.

⚠ WARNING

- New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 250 miles (400 km). You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.
- You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!
- Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving range. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.
- Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.
- Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Carefully apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few careful brake applications.
- Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful brake applications.
- If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
- Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.
- If the brake booster is not working, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

162.561.8U0.21

Electromechanical steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Steering fault! Do not drive vehicle!

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

If the indicator light turns on, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Steering lock: System fault! Please contact dealer.

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to vehicles: with all wheel drive

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Refer to ⇨ *page 151*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all-season tires on all four wheels, because this will improve the braking effect ⇨ *page 206, Winter tires*.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 206, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid wheels with different tread depths ⇨ *page 198, New tires or wheels*.

WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, pay attention to the road ▶

conditions regardless of your speed to reduce the risk of an accident.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the battery is drained by equipment (for example the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the battery charge level. The sensors determine the battery voltage, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Date from battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other, to prevent the battery from draining and to retain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that more energy is not used then is being generated in order to maintain an optimal battery charge level.

Tips

- Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the battery life are limited.
- When the starting ability is endangered, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 15*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the battery when driving short distances, in traffic, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulated the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

The vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display.

The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like ▶

to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the battery can drain. This can happen when little energy is generated, and much is used and the charge level of the battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defroster is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. Due to the increased idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the battery will be charged.

Driving and the environment

Breaking in

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):

- ▸ Do not use full throttle.
- ▸ Do not drive at engine speeds that are more than 2/3 of the maximum permitted RPM.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):

- ▸ Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- ▸ Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- ▸ Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- ▸ Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇨ *page 10*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive very carefully for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Catalytic converter

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- ▸ Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 173, Fuel supply*.
- ▸ Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- ▸ Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 181,* *Adding engine oil* .
- ▸ Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine. ▶

WARNING

– The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.
– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
– Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

– Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
– Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 181*.
– Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
– Do not turn off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
– To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  – Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Shutting down vehicle

If you would like your vehicle to remain inoperative for a longer period of time, contact an Audi or other specialized dealer. They can advise you on necessary precautions e.g. corrosion prevention, maintenance and storage. Pay attention to additional information concerning the battery. Refer to ⇨ *page 187*.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

General

Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

– your personal driving style
– operating conditions
– technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.

► Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red.

Avoid full throttle

Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.

► Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit.

Reducing unnecessary idling

Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.

► Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.
► Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

It makes sense to shut off the engine in traffic jams, when waiting for trains to pass at railroad crossings, or at traffic lights that have long waits on red. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.

► Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an authorized Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

Check your oil each time you fill your tank.

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

Note

– Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage. ►

– Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
– Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Fewer short trips

Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.

▸ Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine.

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100 km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible.

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer.

Driving offroad

General information

When driving offroad, the functions for the electronic stabilization control (ESC) are expanded. ESC offroad mode can be activated in driving situations in which a wheel lock or a differential lock function is needed ⇨ *page 152*.

However, your Audi is not an offroad vehicle. Never drive the vehicle in terrain which is not suitable for the vehicle, or which exceeds your driving skills. Never take any unnecessary risks!

After driving offroad

– After driving offroad, remove branches and other debris from the radiator grille, underbody, and wheels. Look especially for objects (stones) that have been caught in the tire tread.
– Clean the body and the vehicle underbody and inspect the vehicle for possible damages.
– Clean off the dirty windows, headlights, tail lights and the license plate.
– Perform a brake test (especially after driving through water).

WARNING

– Be especially aware and attentive when driving under difficult conditions. Damages to the vehicle and injuries may occur when driving at an excessively high speed or with incorrect driving maneuvers.
– Always adjust your speed and handling to the roads, terrain, traffic and weather conditions. Drive especially slow if offroad with low visibility.
– Please note that the wheels can spin more and the vehicle can swerve when in ESC offroad mode, especially when the road is slippery or has loose surface material.
– Driving stability is reduced in the ESC Offroad mode.

For the sake of the environment

Avoid harming the environment and take nature into consideration.

Tips

Only drive where it is allowed and always stay on the provided roads and paths.

Driving information

There is only one right way to drive in difficult conditions: slowly and with caution!

Observe the following when driving on unpaved roads: ▸

- ▸ Never drive the vehicle in terrain which is not suitable for the vehicle, or which exceeds your driving skills. Never take any unnecessary risks!
- ▸ Drive slowly and cautiously!
- ▸ Pay attention to the **ground clearance** of your vehicle! The clearance may vary depending on the load, ground composition and the environment. The driver is therefore responsible for deciding whether a vehicle can handle a specific situation.
- ▸ Activate the **ESC offroad mode** as needed ⇨ *page 152*.
- ▸ Use the **hill descent assist** when driving down steep slopes ⇨ *page 153*.

Difficult terrain

Never drive in areas that are not familiar to you and drive slowly when off road and be prepared and expect the unexpected (e.g. potholes, boulders, tree stumps, etc.)

To prevent the vehicle from bottoming and avoid damage to the underbody, you should drive straight across severe bumps in the ground with only one side of the vehicle so that only two of your wheels cross the bumps.

Drive quickly through sandy or marshy off-road sections and do not stop, if at all possible.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to avoid vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture on the brake discs and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

162.561.8U0.21

Trailer mode

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system ⇨ ⚠.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your authorized Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches, and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

⚠ WARNING

- If a trailer has electrical brakes please note that these brakes are not activated by the factory-fitted control unit - risk of accident!
- After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.
- Never install a "weight distributing" or "load equalizing" trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed for these kinds of trailer hitches. The hitch attachment can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.
- The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating for your vehicle, found on the safety compliance label on the driver's side B-pillar, must never be exceeded under any circumstances. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of your vehicle is likely to damage your vehicle, and such damage will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty. Exceeding the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating will also change the performance and handling characteristics of your vehicle, which could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Operating instructions

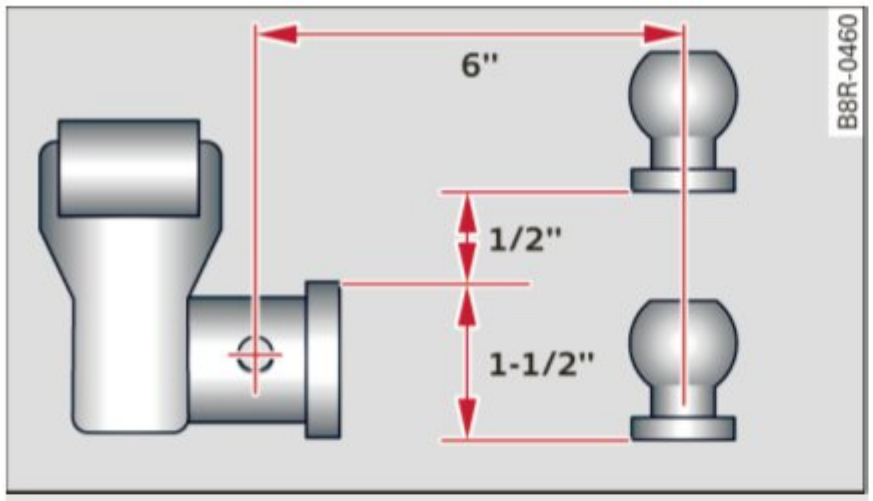


Fig. 143 Permitted ball position of the trailer hitch

Trailer towing weights

With a **factory-installed** or an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible trailer weight is 2,200 lbs (1,000 kg). The maximum permissible unbraked trailer weight is 1,650 lbs (750 kg). These specifications apply when driving on roads having an incline of less than 12%.

Permissible tongue load

For best vehicle handling under these changed conditions, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

With a **factory-installed** or an **aftermarket** trailer hitch, the maximum permissible load on the ball hitch may not exceed 220 lbs (100 kg). It is recommended to use the maximum permissible load.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 166.*

Ball mount

The trailer hitch may only be used with suitable ball mount and ball ⇨ *fig. 143*. Installation of the hitch ball must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under “Full load” on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers’ specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- Do not tow a loaded trailer when your car itself is not loaded.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Observe speed limits.
- Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.
- Always apply brakes early.
- Monitor the temperature gauge. ▶

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 10* must be observed carefully. If the needle moves close to the upper end of the scale, reduce speed immediately and/or turn off the air conditioner.

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing  , pull off the road, stop and let the engine *idle* for about two minutes to prevent heat build-up.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer mode notes

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 232*.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- ▸ With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- ▸ Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to P.

When restarting after parking:

- ▸ Apply the foot brake.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to D/S.
- ▸ Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- ▸ Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the P position.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably use environmentally-friendly products when buying cleaning agents.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicles with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at seals on side windows, doors, the hood, the rear lid or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 inches (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use rotary nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a leather cloth.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car ▶

wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.
– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To prevent paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 46, Cleaning windshield wiper blades*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ Camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

Component	Situation	Solution
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 229*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 168, Car washes*

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Internal cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: grease dissolving spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights/tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
– **Sensors/camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Door windows**
  – Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To ▶

avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
- Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
- To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts/trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Displays**
- To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Fuel and Refueling

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 174*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time. ▶

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, built-up carbon deposits can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

- Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 176*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 230*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 173*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refueling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86). ▶

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Refueling



Fig. 144 Right rear vehicle side: Opening the fuel filler flap



Fig. 145 Fuel filler flap with attached fuel cap

When activating the central locking, the fuel filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked. Refuel the vehicle with the ignition turned *off*.

Taking the fuel cap off

- Press the left side of the fuel filler flap to open it ⇨ *fig. 144* -arrow-.
- Unscrew fuel cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap ⇨ *fig. 145*.

Refueling procedure

- Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- Select a medium refueling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

Putting the fuel cap back on

- After filling your tank, twist the fuel cap clockwise as far as it will go.
- Close the fuel filler flap.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇨ *page 25* to come on.

WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.
- Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
- Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  - Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up ▶

while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
- Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.
- Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
- If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.
- Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
- Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.
- Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852-86).

Note

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

Tips

- Running your engine while refueling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition turned on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refueling.
- The fuel filler flap of your vehicle is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.



Fig. 146 Side trim panel in the luggage compartment: emergency release mechanism

The emergency release mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Loosen the loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully ⇨ (!). The fuel filler door is released.
- ▸ To open the fuel filler door, press on the left side ⇨ *page 175, fig. 144*.

Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Checking and Filling

Hood

Opening the hood

The hood is released from the interior.



Fig. 147 Driver footwell: release lever



Fig. 148 Rocker switch under the hood

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

- ▸ With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 147*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly. ⇨ ⚠
- ▸ Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 148*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood.

⚠ WARNING

Hot engine coolant can burn you.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

Closing the engine hood

- ▸ Pull the hood down until the pressure from the struts is reduced.
- ▸ Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.

– When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.

– If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.

Working in the engine compartment

Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.

Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

– Turn off the engine.

– Remove the ignition key.

– Apply the parking brake.

– Move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).

– Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

▶

- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.
- Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir.
- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the battery.
  - Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
  - Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
  - Ignition cables
  - Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
  - First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever of automatic transmission to “P” (Park).
  - Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and do not wear clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.
- Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer.

Engine compartment

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

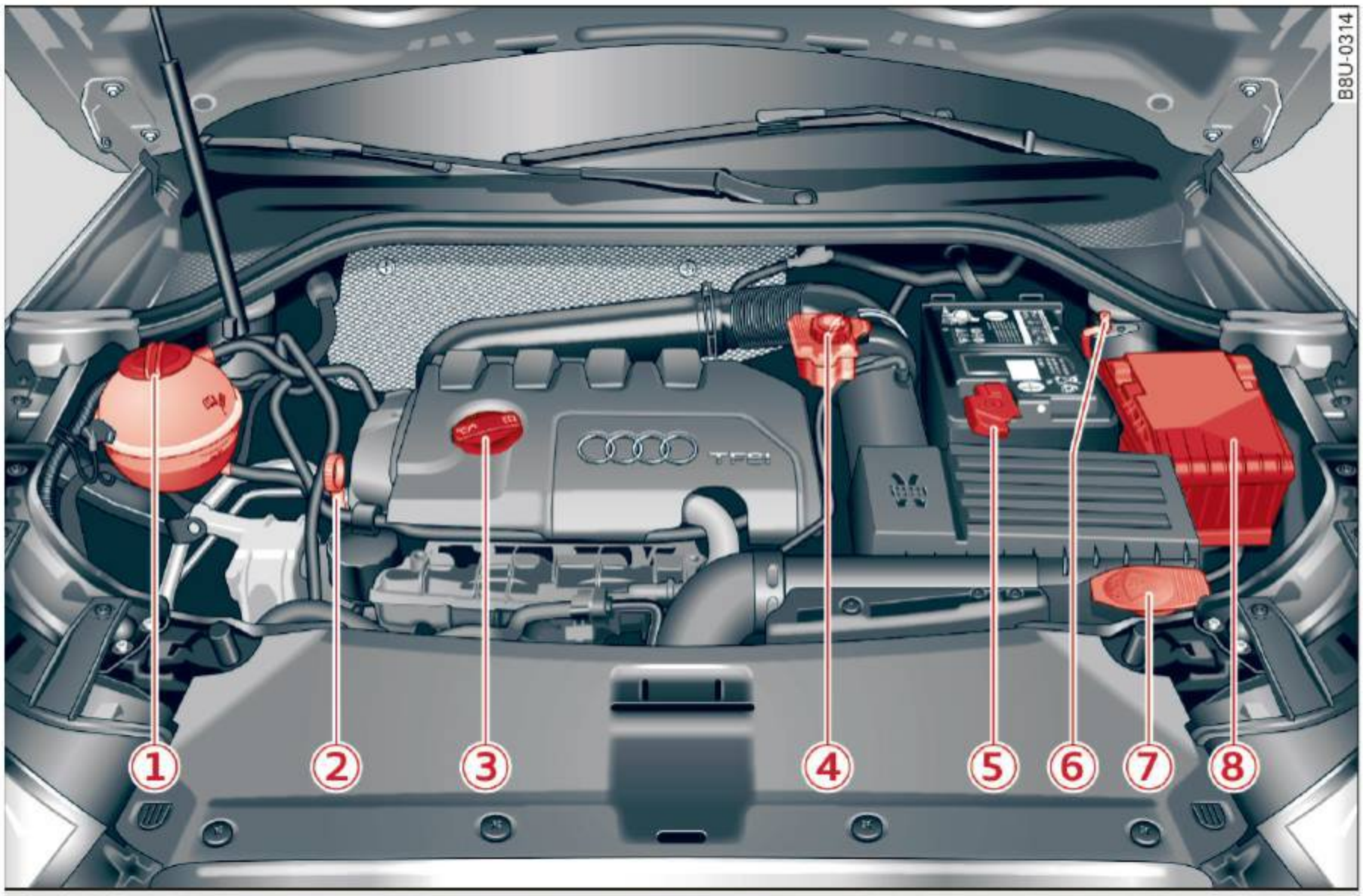


Fig. 149 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Coolant reservoir (🌡) 183
② Oil dipstick 181
③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) . . . 181
④ Brake fluid reservoir (🛞) 186
⑤ Jump start point (+) under a cover , 189, 223
⑥ Jump start point (-) with hex head screw , ... 189, 223
⑦ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) 190
⑧ Fuse housing 219

The oil dipstick (position ②) and the engine oil filler opening (position ③) can be located in different positions depending on the engine version.

⚠ WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177.*

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you have to top off the oil between oil changes, use the Audi oil quality standard specified in the table. ▶

	Audi oil quality standard
Gasoline engine	VW 502 00 or VW 504 00

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 quart/liter of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 159*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 181*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 181*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult an authorized Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. An authorized Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level

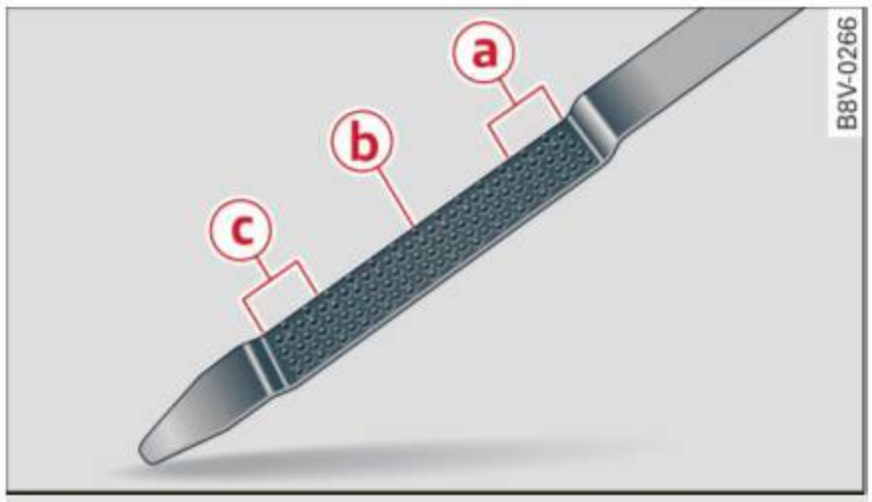


Fig. 150 Guide for determining levels on the oil dipstick (example)

Determining the oil level

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Let the engine run in idle briefly while it is at operating temperature and then shut the engine off.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Remove the oil dipstick. Wipe off the oil dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
- ▸ Remove the dipstick again and then read the oil level. Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 181*.

Oil level in the (a) area

- ▸ Do not add any oil.

Oil level in the (b) area

- ▸ You may add oil. After adding oil, the level should be in the (a) area.

Oil level in the (c) area

- ▸ You must add oil. After adding oil, the level should be in the (a) area.

The oil consumption of the engine may be up to 1/2 quart per 600 miles (0.5 liters/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operational conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 151 Engine compartment: Cover on the oil filler neck

- ▸ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.
- ▸ Shut the engine off.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 151*, ⇨ *page 179, fig. 149*.
- ▸ Carefully top off with 0.5 quarts (0.5 liters) of the appropriate oil ⇨ *page 179*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 181*.
- ▸ Top off the oil again, if necessary.
- ▸ Screw the cap back on the filling hole.

⚠ WARNING

– While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!
– The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!
– If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.

▶

Note

– Check the oil level using the radio or MMI*. If the message **Please reduce oil level** appears, contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
– **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

For the sake of the environment

– Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
– Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of specially conditioned water and the manufacturer's glycol-basedcoolant additive G13 antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canada models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

– - 31 °F (- 35 °C) USA
– - 40 °F (- 40 °C) Canada.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.

Note

– Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
– When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  – We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ or G13 for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
– Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Checking the engine coolant level

The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 152 Engine compartment: Cover on the coolant expansion tank

▸ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.
▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
▸ Turn off the ignition.
▸ Read the engine coolant level from the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *fig. 152*, ⇨ *page 179, fig. 149*. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings. When the engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the "MAX" marking. ▶

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 179*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇨ *page 14* will blink until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.

– Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
– Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
– Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
– To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant

Be very careful when adding engine coolant.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177*.

Requirement: There must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 183, fig. 152* and **carefully** turn the cap counter-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 183, Coolant* up to the MAX marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇨ *page 183, Coolant*.

We recommend using only coolant additive G12++, G13 or in an emergency G12+. Do **not** use a different additive. In an emergency use plain water until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling.

Do not fill coolant above the “MAX” mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot. ▶

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.
  – Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
  – Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
  – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  – To avoid being burned, do not spill anti-freeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.
– Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store anti-freeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.
– If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked “poison”.

Note

– Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. Seek professional assistance.
– Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
– If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇨ *page 183* must be restored as soon as possible.

For the sake of the environment

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations.

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

The radiator fan is driven by the engine via the V-belt. The viscous clutch regulates the speed of the fan according to the temperature of the coolant.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan* switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇨ ⚠, if

– the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
– the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.
– The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.
– The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 153 Engine compartment: Cover on the brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177.*

- Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *fig. 153*, ⇨ *page 179, fig. 149*. The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

The brake fluid reservoir is located at the rear partition of the engine compartment on the left side ⇨ *page 179*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light (USA models: BRAKE, Canada models: (!)) will come on ⇨ *page 13*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

Tips

The brake fluid reservoir is located underneath the cover.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

WARNING

- Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!
- Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:
  - Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.
  - The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer.

Battery

General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures or long daily drives we recommend that you have the electrolyte level checked by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇨ *page 189*.

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

With certain types of airbag deployment, the battery is disconnected from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons ⇨ ⚠ *in Repair, care and disposal of the airbags on page 125*.

Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs.

Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period ⇨ *page 157*.

Some of the convenience functions may not operate, such as the interior lights or the power seat adjustment. The convenience functions will be available again when you turn on the ignition and start the engine.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇨ *page 189*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced.

Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**

	**No** **- sparks** **- flames** **- smoking.**
	**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.
- Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.
  - Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.
  - If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.
  - If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.
- When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
- Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.
- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.
- Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.
- When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!
- Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32°F (0°C).
- Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.
- Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect ▶

the battery from “freezing”, otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced.

Battery charging

Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.



Fig. 154 Engine compartment: Connectors for charger and jumper cables

Always read and heed all WARNINGS below ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on the battery on page 188*.

- ▸ Turn off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- ▸ Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- ▸ Open the engine hood ⇨ *page 177*.
- ▸ Open the cover on the positive pole ⇨ *fig. 154*.
- ▸ Connect the charger connectors according to the instructions to the **jump start bolts**. (Bolts under the cover = “positive”, Bolts with hex head = “negative”).
- ▸ Only now plug the mains lead for the charging equipment into the wall outlet and turn it on ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ **Make sure the charging rate is not over 30 amps/14.8 Volt.**
- ▸ When the battery is fully charged: Turn the charging equipment off and remove the mains lead from the wall outlet.
- ▸ Now remove the clamps for the charging equipment.
- ▸ Close the cover on the positive pole.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 177*.

A discharged battery can **freeze** at temperatures of only 32 °F (0 °C). Allow a frozen battery to thaw completely before attempting to charge it ⇨ ⚠. However, we recommend not using a thawed battery again because the battery casing can be cracked due to ice formation and can leak battery acid.

Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps/14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment.

Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.

- – Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.
- – Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- – Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.
- – Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.
- – To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.
- – Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.
- – Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.

▶

Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.

Battery replacement

The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇨ *page 157*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better then vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized Audi dealer must code the battery in the energy management system to enable you to use the energy management functions correctly after replacing the battery.

If it is not possible to use a battery of this type, the new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12-volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are turned off.

Note

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 155 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The washer fluid reservoir contains the windshield washer fluid ⇨ *page 179, fig. 149*. The reservoir capacity is found in ⇨ *page 230*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

- The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
- Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
- Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

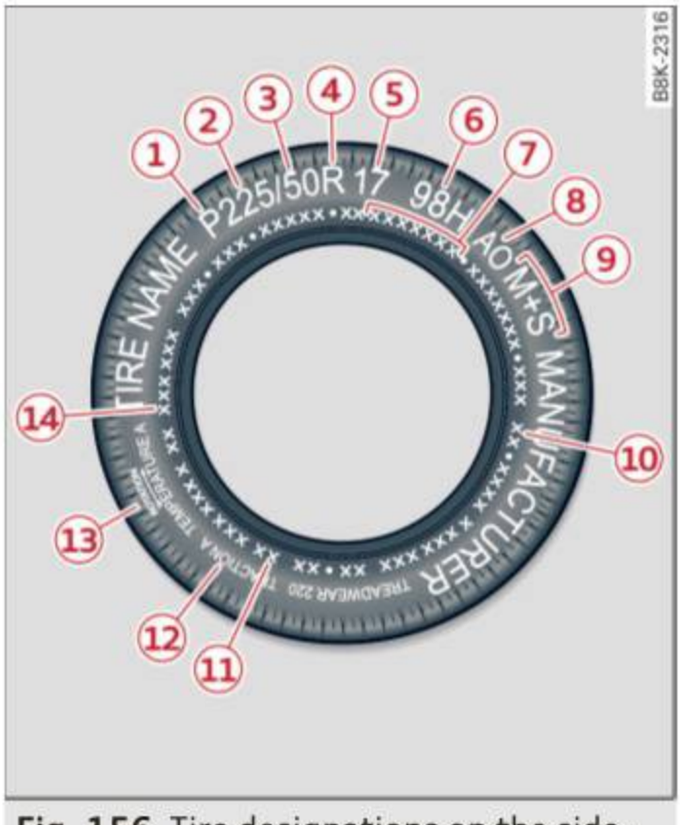


Fig. 156 Tire designations on the sidewall ▸

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 206*.

“EXTRA LOAD”, “xl” or “RF” indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code “ZR”.

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2215 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2015.

⑧ Audi Original equipment tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” or “RO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards of safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will ▶

be happy to provide more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire has characteristics that make it suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for tread wear, traction and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 207*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 218*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement. ▶

162.561.8U0.21

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of: ▶

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 194, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as ▶

"XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 192*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 206*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 200, Tread wear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear. ▶

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2215 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2015. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 203*) and dividing by two. ▶

162.561.8U0.21

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 201, fig. 159* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 203* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum adhesion properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original equipment tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

If the spare tire is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - then only use the spare tire temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

On **all wheel drive** vehicles, all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by ▸

different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire that has the same circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
–Only use tires that are more than 6 years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage

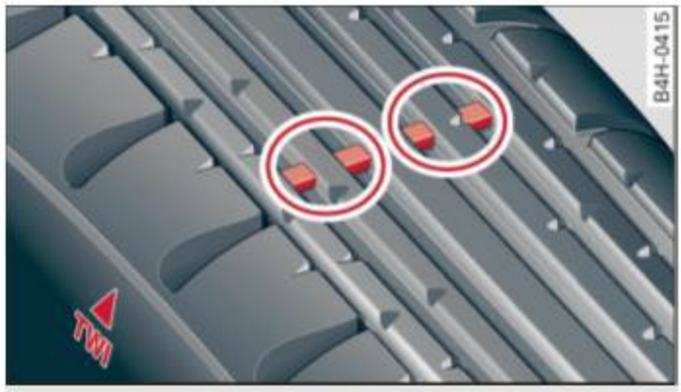


Fig. 157 Tire profile: tread wear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear. ▶

162.561.8U0.21

–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Tread wear indicator

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high wear indicators ⇨ *fig. 157* running across the tread. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Wheel rotation

Rotating the wheels regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate wheels, install the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 218*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tire pressure



Fig. 158 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

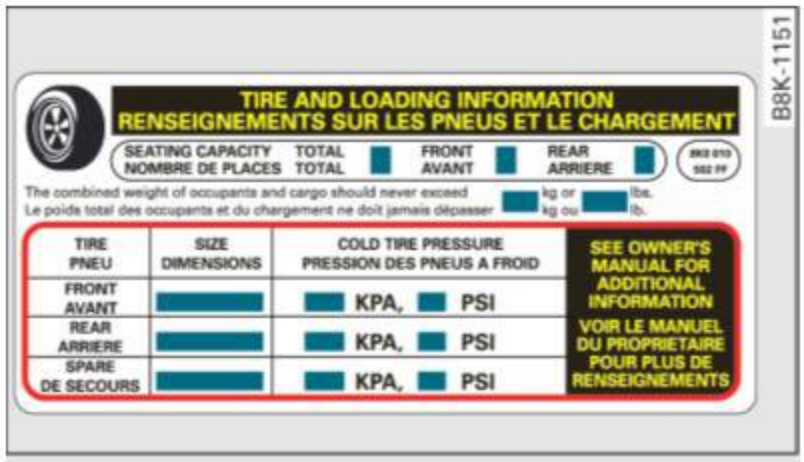


Fig. 159 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 158*, ⇨ *fig. 159*.

When the vehicle is partially loaded (up to 3 people), use the tire pressure specified for normal loads ⇨ *table on page 203*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 159* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 210*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load. ▸

– Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 203, Tires and vehicle load limits*.
– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.
– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 203* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 201, fig. 158*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 3 people)[a]				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
Q3: 2.0L 4 cylinders	235/50 R18 97H All Season	32	220	32	220	33	230	36	250
	235/50 R18 97V High Performance	32	220	32	220	33	230	36	250
	255/40 R19 100H xl All Season	33	230	33	230	44	300	46	320
	255/40 R19 96Y High Performance	33	230	33	230	44	300	46	320
	255/35 R20 97Y xl High Performance	33	230	33	230	44	300	46	320

[a] 2 people in the front, 1 person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 201* and load limits ⇨ *page 203*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating ▶

162.561.8U0.21

position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 201, fig. 158*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS”on your vehicle’s placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 201, fig. 158*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from “XXX” kilograms or “XXX” pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 201, fig. 158*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 191, fig. 156*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts ▶

and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, refer to ⇨ *page 214, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 201*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛷ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve traction in the snow.

- ▸ Only install snow chains on the *front* wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains if necessary after driving a few feet. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum permitted speed when driving with snow chains. Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

Snow chains not only improve the *driving* in winter road conditions, but also the *braking*.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

The snow chains must have **low-profile** links and must not be thicker than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm), including the lock.

You must remove the chains when driving on roads that are *free* of snow. When roads are free ▶

of snow, snow chains can impair handling and damage the tires, and the chains will quickly be destroyed.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 201*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
– These tires may wear more quickly than others.
– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 206* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 191, fig. 156*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

⚠ WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

(!) General notes

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation ▶

also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 160 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 210*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 201, fig. 159*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

- the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
- the tire has structural damage.
- the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 210*.
- the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

(!) Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠.
Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. ▶

Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 210*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If **TPMS** appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 210*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

- If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
- The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
- Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.
- Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

- The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
- Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
- The tires with the identification “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 198* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to vehicles: with tire pressure monitoring system

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 201*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car) systems*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a flat tire. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep incline, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Put on a reflective vest, if available.
- Set up the warning triangle, if available.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Pay attention to the steps above. They are for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Vehicle tool kit

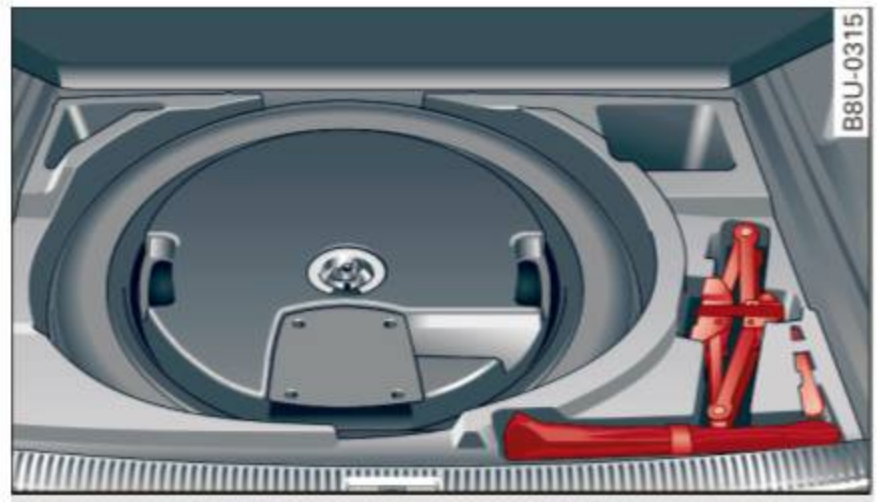


Fig. 161 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover folded upward

The vehicle tool kit is stored under the cargo floor cover behind the seat backrest ⇨ *fig. 161*.

The vehicle tool kit includes:

– Hook for removing wheel covers
– Alignment pin for changing the wheel
– Screwdriver with reversible blade
– Reversible bit
– Jack
– Auxiliary tool for selector lever emergency release
– Lug wrench
– Towing eye

Some of the vehicle items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras.

Before returning the jack to its place, retract the jack arm fully.

WARNING

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.

▶

– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Folding chocks

Applies to vehicles: with folding chocks

The folding chocks are part of the onboard tool kit.

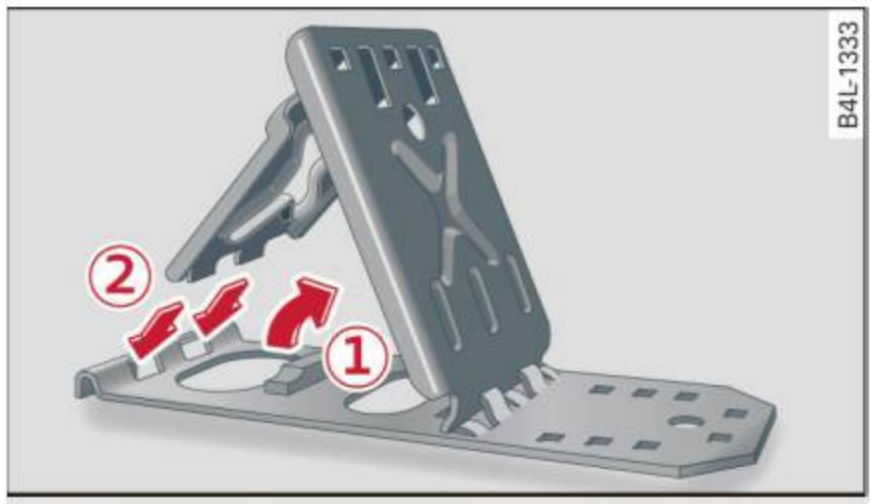


Fig. 162 Open the folding chocks.

▸ To use the folding chocks, lift up the support plate ① and insert them using both "tabs" into the slotted holes on the base plate ② ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– The folding chock will not work and can lose its stability if the support plate "tabs" are not securely fitted in the slots on the base plate. If this is the case, the vehicle could start moving when changing a tire.
– Never use folding chocks that are damaged or that were not assembled correctly.

Removing the subwoofer

Applies to vehicles: with subwoofer

The subwoofer must be removed before the spare tire can be removed.



Fig. 163 Spare wheel well: subwoofer

Removing the subwoofer

▸ Remove the cargo floor.
▸ Press the tabs on the connector ① together.
▸ Remove the connector ② and set the removed cable aside.
▸ Remove the wing bolt and then remove the retainer underneath it.
▸ Carefully remove the subwoofer.

Installing the subwoofer

▸ Carefully place the subwoofer in the rim well. The word "FRONT" on the subwoofer must face forward.
▸ Insert the connector that was removed.
▸ Secure the subwoofer with the wing bolt.
▸ Reinsert the cargo floor.

Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

Applies to vehicles: with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)



Fig. 164 Luggage compartment: space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced, if necessary, by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Removing the spare tire

- ▸ Remove the cargo floor.
- ▸ Remove the wing bolt and then remove the retainer underneath it.
- ▸ Remove the subwoofer* ⇨ *page 212*.
- ▸ Remove the spare tire.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare wheel in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

⚠ WARNING

- – Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- – If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- – The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
- – After mounting the compact spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure of the compact spare tire must be 4.2 bar; otherwise, you risk having an accident.
- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h). You risk having an accident.
- – Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering. You risk having an accident.
- – Never drive using more than one spare wheel and tire. You risk having an accident.
- – Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.
- – For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
- – Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident. Never store the spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- ▸ After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ *page 211*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to the P position**.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Take the **jack** ⇨ *page 211* and the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 212* out of the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

- – If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the ▶

emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed with the folding chocks or other objects. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in "P" (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 100*.

Note

If you are changing the wheel on a steep incline, use the folding chock ⇨ *page 212* to block the opposite wheel to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Tips

Obey all laws.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 215*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 215*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 216*.
4. **Lift** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 216*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install the **spare tire** ⇨ *page 217*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts in a crisscross pattern ⇨ *page 215*.
9. Replace the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***.

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 216* and ⇨ *page 218*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 100*.
- Check the **tire pressure** of the spare tire as soon as possible.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 105 ft lbs. (140 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.

Removing the wheel covers/bolt caps



Fig. 165 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel cover



Fig. 166 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Wheel cover*

- ▸ Insert the **hook** provided with the vehicle tool kit in the hole in the hub ⇨ *fig. 165*.
- ▸ Pull off the **decorative wheel cover**.

Wheel bolt caps*

- ▸ Push the **plastic clip** provided with the vehicle tool kit over the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇨ *fig. 166*.
- ▸ Pull on the **plastic clip** to remove the cap.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 167 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- ▸ Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 167*.

Tightening

- ▸ Install the **wheel bolt wrench** over the wheel bolt and push it down as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

⚠ WARNING

- – Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
- – *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

- – Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
- – If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

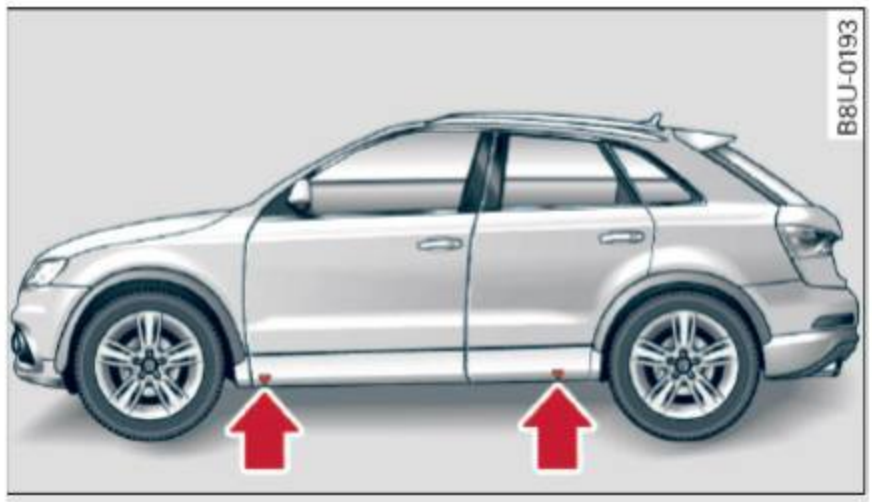


Fig. 168 Sill panels: markings

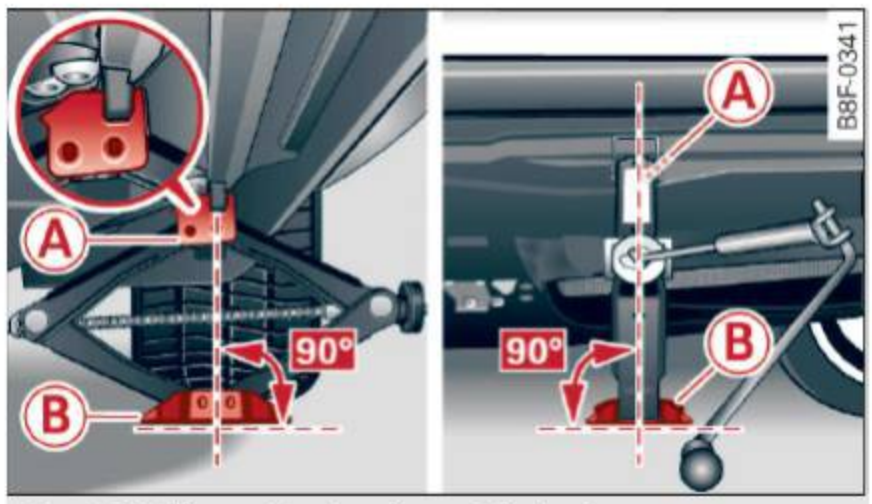


Fig. 169 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

The location of the jack point is indicated by an indentation on the underside of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 168*.

- ▸ Activate the **parking brake** to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P position.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 168*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until the jaw ⇨ *fig. 169* Ⓐ covers the **notch** on the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the vehicle jack so the jaw Ⓐ covers the notch and the base plate Ⓑ is flat on the floor. The base plate Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.
- ▸ Install the rod on the vehicle jack: Insert the rod into the opening on the handwheel. Turn the rod left or right to secure it.
- ▸ Continue raising the jack with the rod until the wheel lifts off the ground slightly.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 168*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.

Soft ground under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always place the jack on firm ground. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. Use a non-slip surface such as a rubber mat on a **slippery surface** such as tile.

⚠ WARNING

- – You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  - – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  - – Use only the jack* supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
  - – Do not use the jack* supplied with your vehicle to raise other vehicles, as these may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
  - – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  - – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
- – To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  - – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  - – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  - – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.

▸

– Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!

Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare tire

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.



Fig. 170 Changing a wheel: using the hexagonal socket (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 171 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Remove the topmost wheel bolt completely with the **hexagonal socket** in the screwdriver handle (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 170* and set it aside on a *clean* surface.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 171*.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare tire

- Push the spare tire over the alignment pin ⇨ (!).
- Screw on the wheel bolts and tighten them *slightly* using the hexagonal socket.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly. Tighten them *in a crisscross pattern*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.
- Perform the steps required after changing the wheel ⇨ *page 214, After changing a wheel.*

WARNING

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket - risk of accident!

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person to help you.

Tips

– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 218*.

– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an **arrow on the side of the tire**.
– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 198, New tires or wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 105 ft lbs. (140 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 198, New tires or wheels*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Note

Do not use commercially available tire sealants. Otherwise, the electrical components of the tire pressure monitoring system* will no longer work properly and the sensor for the tire pressure monitoring system* will have to be replaced by qualified workshop.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.



Fig. 172 Driver's side of the cockpit: folding the storage compartment down



Fig. 173 Engine compartment: removing the fuse panel cover

The fuses are located in the driver's side footwell behind the storage compartment and in the engine compartment.

Preparations

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.

Fuses behind the storage compartment

- Open the storage compartment.
- Press the left and right retainers inward and fold the compartment all the way down ⇨ *fig. 172*.

Fuses in the engine compartment

- Open the hood ⇨ *page 177*.
- To release the fuse panel cover, slide both sliding retainers at the left and right forward ⇨ *fig. 173*.
- Remove the fuse panel cover.

Replacing fuses

The clamp is located below the fuses behind the storage compartment (driver's side).

- Fold this compartment all the way down and remove the clamp from the holder.
- Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

Tips

- The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Cockpit fuse assignment

The fuse number is stamped into the plastic below or above each fuse.

No.	Equipment
1	LED headlight (left)
2	LED headlight (right)
5	LED headlight (left)
6	LED headlight (right)
7	Steering lock
8	Convenience access
9	Airbag control module, AIRBAG OFF indicator light
12	Transmission control module
13	Air quality sensor for climate control system, heated window washer nozzles, OFF button, reverse light button (P), oil level sensor, climate control system, seat occupant detection system, seat heating, buttons in the center console, automatic dimming mirror
14	Engine control module, transmission control module, quattro control module, brake lights, electromechanical steering, Gateway control module, trailer hitch control module, ESC control module, light switch, damping control module
15	Headlight range control module, instrument illumination, headlights (left, right), diagnostic connector, headlight range control module, crankcase housing heater, air flow sensor, socket relay, DC/DC converter
16	Parking system
17	Parking system rearview camera
18	TV tuner
19	Engine starter control, DC/DC converter
20	ESC control module, climate/heating control, special functions interface
21	Selector mechanism power supply
22	Interior monitoring
23	(P) button, front interior lighting buttons, diagnostic connector, light switch, light/rain sensor, humidity sensor
25	Headlight power supply
26	Rear window wiper
27	Starter system
28	Infotainment
29	Supply for the parking system rearview camera and TV tuner
30	Infotainment
31	Infotainment
32	Instrument cluster
33	Automatic dimming rearview mirror
36	Cigarette lighter, cockpit/luggage compartment socket
37	Cockpit/rear socket
38	Transmission control module
40	Trailer hitch control module
41	Trailer hitch control module
42	Trailer hitch control module
44	Rear window defogger
45	Electromechanical parking brake control module
46	Trailer hitch control module
47	quattro control module
48	Automatic luggage compartment lid control module
50	Fan
51	Electromechanical parking brake control module
52	BCM
53	Front seat heating
54	Panorama roof
55	Sun shade on the panorama roof
56	Adaptive dampers control module

Engine compartment fuse assignment

The fuse number is stamped into the plastic below or above each fuse.

No.	Equipment
1	Transmission supply
2	ESC
3	Horn
4	DC/DC converter
5	BCM, battery data module
6	BCM (right)
7	Washer fluid pump
8	BCM (left)
9	Seat adjustment lumbar support
10	Heat oxygen sensor
11	Steering column lever, multifunction steering wheel controls
12	Cell phone adapter
13	Engine control module
14	Engine control module
15	Gateway
16	Heated oxygen sensor, fuel pump, engine components
17	Engine components
18	Fuel pump control module
19	Sound amplifier, DC/DC converter
20	Clutch pedal sensor, brake light sensor
22	Windshield wipers
23	Water circulation pump, auxiliary heater
24	Ignition coils
25	Driver's door control module (central locking, window regulators)
26	Front passenger's door control module (central locking, window regulators)
27	Terminal 15 supply
29	Power seat adjustment
30	ESC

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights):

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light are identified by the high voltage sticker.

LED headlights* require no maintenance. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer if a bulb needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Changing Xenon lamps without the necessary equipment can cause serious personal injury.

- Bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed. Potential risk of injury!
- On vehicles equipped with gas discharge bulbs (Xenon light) life-threatening injuries can result from improper handling of the high-voltage portions of such lamps!
- Only your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps. There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the ▶

bulb holders that can cause serious cuts. If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

– If you still prefer to replace the light bulbs yourself, be aware that the engine compartment is a hazardous area to work in⇨ *page 177* ⇨ ⚠.
– It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you want to change a bulb.

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 177*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

Tips

- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ▶

When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

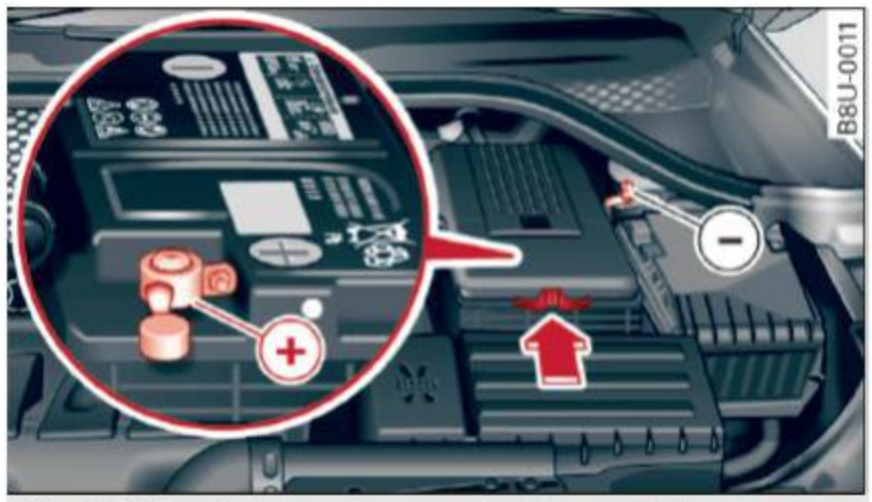


Fig. 174 Engine compartment: Connectors for jumper cables and charger

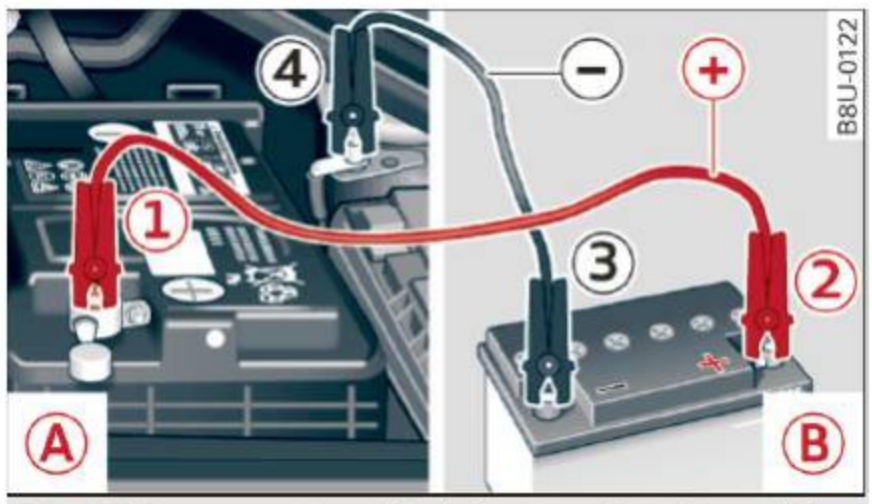


Fig. 175 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ discharged vehicle battery, Ⓑ booster battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- ▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- ▸ To access the positive terminal, remove the battery cover ⇨ *fig. 174*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ① ⇨ *fig. 175* (Bolt under cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓑ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓑ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start bolt** ④ (Bolt with hex head = "negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓐ.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓑ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- ▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓐ in the usual manner.
- ▸ If the engine fails to start: do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- ▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- ▸ Fit the cover back onto the battery.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their *metal parts in full contact* with the battery terminals.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Do not bend over the batteries - danger of chemical burns!

▸

– The battery cell locking screws must be tightened securely.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 177*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 175*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi, towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 225* and ⇨ *page 226*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

Only install the front towing loop when it is needed.

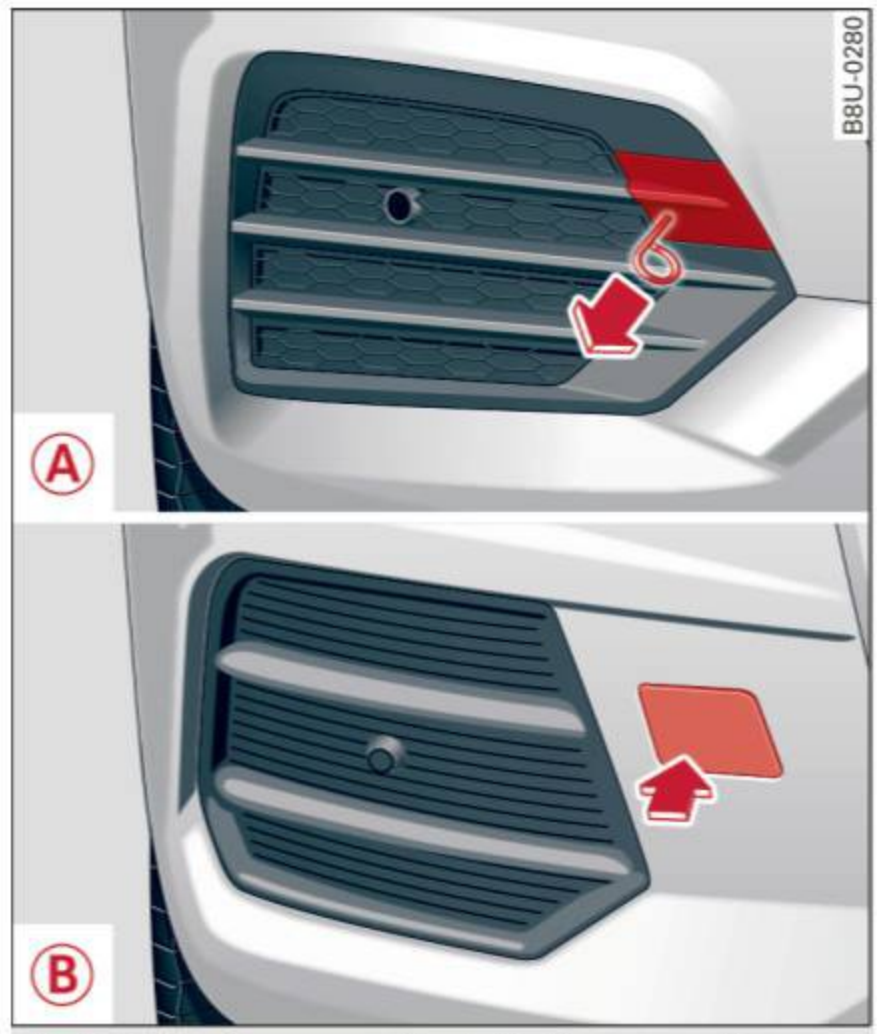


Fig. 176 Front bumper on the right side: remove the cover



Fig. 177 Front bumper on the right side: screw in the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front ▶

bumper. Depending on the version, the cover can be removed in different ways ⇨ *fig. 176*.

- ▸ Version Ⓐ: Remove the towing loop and the hook from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 211*. Or
- ▸ Version Ⓑ: Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 211*.
- ▸ Version Ⓐ: Insert the hook into the hole on the cover and carefully pull off the cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 176*. Or
- ▸ Version Ⓑ: press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 176*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 177* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop



Fig. 178 Rear bumper: cover



Fig. 179 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

Vehicles with a towing loop

On vehicles without a factory-installed trailer hitch*, the rear towing loop is located on the right side of the bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 211*.
- ▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 178*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 179* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

Vehicles with a trailer hitch*

- ▸ Tilt the trailer hitch out.
- ▸ Attach the towing bar or the towing cable to the trailer hitch.

⚠ WARNING

– If the towing loop is not screwed in as far as it will go, the thread can pull out when the vehicle is towed - potential risk of an accident.

– If your vehicle has a **trailer hitch*** only use a special towing bar to prevent damaging the ball hitch. These towing bars have been specially designed for trailer towing hitches.

– If your vehicle has a **trailer hitch*** use only special towing cables.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck



Fig. 180 Vehicle on flat bed truck ▶

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

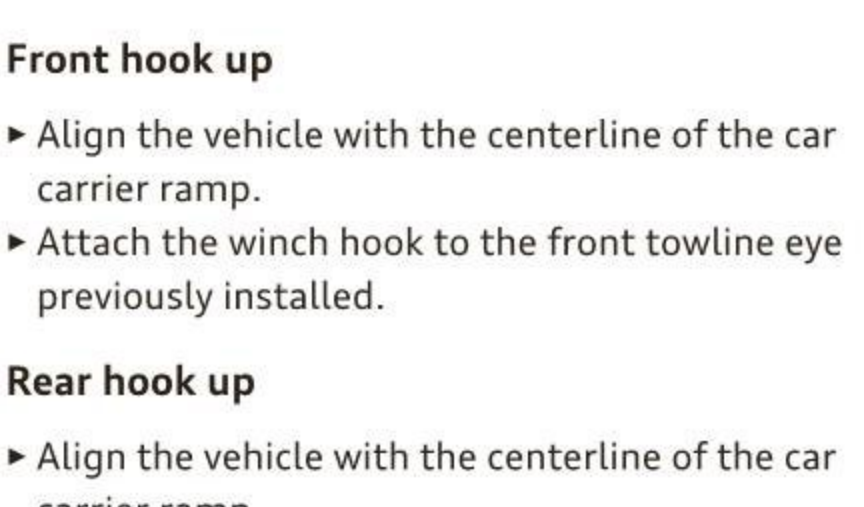


Fig. 181 Front lifting point

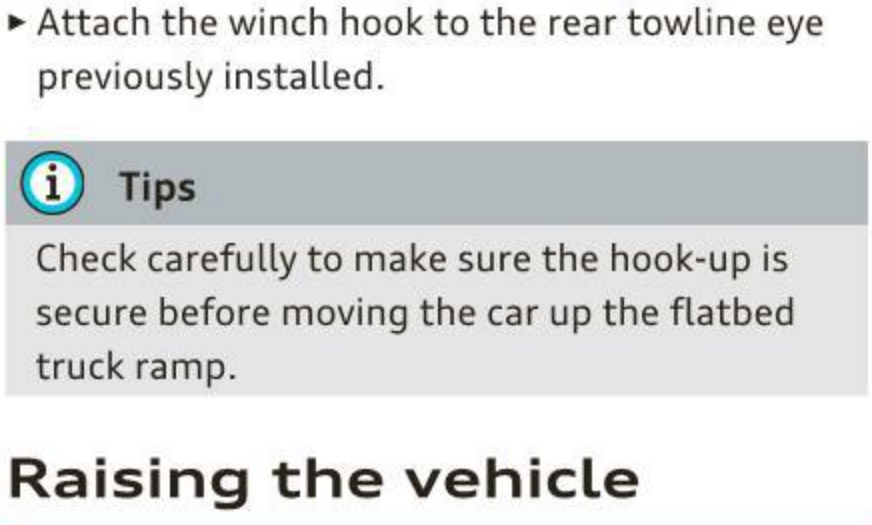


Fig. 182 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 181* and ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 181*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the onboard jack ⇨ *fig. 182*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 216*.

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - – Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 181* and ⇨ *fig. 182*.
  - – Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- – When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- – Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle: ▸

- The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.
- To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.

Technical data

Vehicle identification



Fig. 183 Location on driver's side dash panel: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate

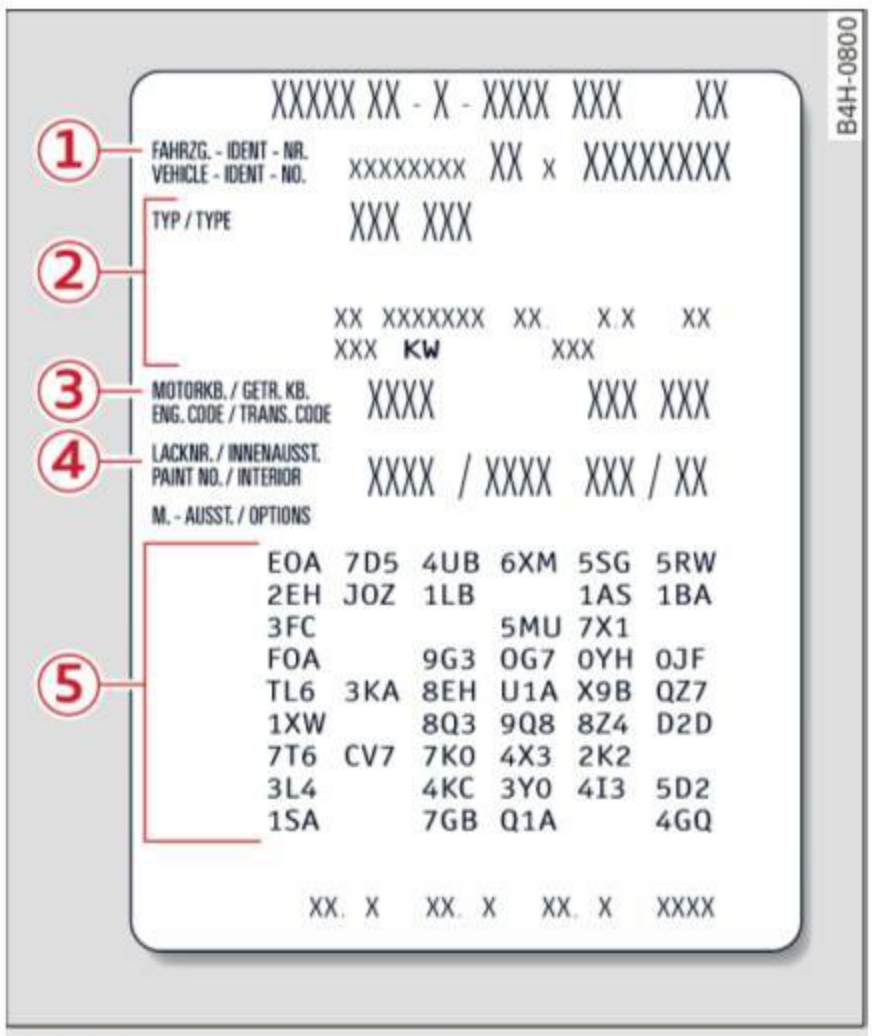


Fig. 184 Inside the luggage compartment: Vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number is located in different places:

– under the windshield on the driver's side ⇨ *fig. 183*.
– in the radio or in the MMI*: CAR function button > **(Car) Systeme*** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located in the luggage compartment near the battery.

The label ⇨ *fig. 184* shows the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission code
④ Paint number and interior
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed on the driver's side B-pillar.

Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is **165 lb (75 kg)**. The roof weight is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying.

⚠ WARNING

- The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle Ioads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

Length	in (mm)	172.8 (4388)
Width	in (mm)	72.0 (1831)
Width (across mirrors)	in (mm)	79.4 (2019)
Height (unloaded)[a)]	in (mm)	62.5 (1590)

a) The height of the vehicle depends on the tires and the suspension.

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Capacities

Fuel tank: total capacity	gal (liters)	16.9 (64.0)
Windshield washer fluid container	quarts (liters)	4.8 (4.5)

Gasoline engines

Q3 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	200 @ 5100 - 6000
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	207 @ 1700 - 5000
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)** ⇨ *page 173, Gasoline*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 800-822-2834.

162.561.8U0.21

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside of North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service Manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of ▶

today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 177.*

WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack* supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied.

▶

162.561.8U0.21

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 177*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This ▶

means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunications and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Cruise control*
– Convenience key*
– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Electronic immobilizer
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

162.561.8U0.21

A

A/C (automatic climate control system) 65
A/C (manual climate control system) 63
Accessories 53, 234
Adaptive dampers 80
Adaptive dampers (indicator light) 18
Adaptive Light (defective) 18
Adding
  Engine coolant 184
  Engine oil 181
Additional accessories 234
Additives
  Engine oil 181
Adjustable steering column 67
Adjusting
  Steering column 67
Adjusting the center console lighting 43
Airbag 112
  Warning/indicator lights 16
Airbag system 127
  Advanced Airbag-System 116
  Advanced Airbag System components ... 118
  Care 125
  Children 133
  Child restraints 134
  Components (front airbags) 118
  Danger of fitting a child safety seat on the front passenger seat 113
  Disposal 125
  Front airbags 116, 117
  How do the front airbags work? 120
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 118
  How the Advanced Airbag System components work together 120
  Important information 112
  Indicator light 122
  Monitoring 122
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 122
  Repairs 125
  Safety instructions 124
  Side airbags 126
  Side curtain airbags 129
  Weight-sensing mat 133
  When must the system be inspected? ... 122
All season tires 206
All weather lights 39
All wheel drive 156
Alternator
  refer to Generator 15
Anti-freeze
  Windshield washer system 190
  also refer to Engine coolant system 183
Anti-lock braking system
  Warning/indicator lights 16
Anti-Lock Braking System 151
Anti-slip regulation
  Warning/indicator lights 16
Anti-Slip Regulation 151
Anti-theft systems
  Electronic immobilizer 32
Armrest 51
Ashtray 53
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 232
AUTO
  Automatic climate control system 65
  Automatic headlights 39
Automatic belt retractor 107
Automatic key 28
Automatic post-collision braking system .. 152
Automatic transmission 82
  Driving tips 83
  Hill descent control 85
  Kick-down 86
  Selector lever emergency release 86
  Selector lever positions 82
  Shifting manually 85
  Steering wheel with shift paddles 85
  tiptronic mode 85
Automatic wipe/wash system 45
Auto Safety Hotline 102
Average consumption 22
Average speed 22
Avoid damaging the vehicle 159

B

Battery 15, 187
  Battery location inside the luggage compartment 187
  Charge level 157
  Charging 189
  Energy management 157

Important warnings when working on the battery . . . 187
Jump starting . . . 223
Replacing the battery . . . 190
Winter operation . . . 187
Working on the battery . . . 187
Before driving . . . 95
Belt tensioners . . . 110
Blended gasoline . . . 173
Blower
Automatic climate control system . . . 65
Manual climate control system . . . 63
Booster seats . . . 140
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid . . . 186
Checking the brake fluid level . . . 186
Brakes . . . 154
Brake booster . . . 154
New brake pads . . . 154
Parking brake . . . 71
Brake system
Brake fluid . . . 186
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement . . . 186
Brake light defective . . . 18
Fluid reservoir . . . 186
Warning/indicator lights . . . 13
Worn brake pads symbol . . . 16
Braking
Brake assist . . . 151
Emergency braking function . . . 73
Starting on inclines . . . 73
Break-in period
Tires . . . 159
Breaking in . . . 159
New tires . . . 198
Bulbs . . . 221

C

California Proposition 65 Warning . . . 178
Battery specific . . . 188
Capacities . . . 230
Engine oil . . . 179
Caps for wheel bolts, removing . . . 215
Care . . . 168
Cargo area
refer to Loading the luggage compartment . . . 100
Cargo floor . . . 61
Catalytic converter . . . 159
Center armrest . . . 51
Central locking . . . 27
Central locking switch . . . 31
Convenience key . . . 30
Emergency locking . . . 32
Luggage compartment lid . . . 33
Panorama roof . . . 37
Power windows . . . 37
Remote control key . . . 29
Certification . . . 235
Changing engine oil . . . 182
Checking
Engine coolant level . . . 183
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat . . . 113
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? . . . 149
Child restraints system anchors . . . 144
Child safety . . . 132
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats . . . 135
Important things to know when driving with children . . . 132
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system . . . 146
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook . . . 146
Tether anchors . . . 147
Tether straps . . . 147
Child safety lock
Rear doors . . . 35, 36
Child safety seats
Booster seats . . . 140
Convertible child seats . . . 138
Convertible locking retractor . . . 143
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat . . . 113
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? . . . 135
Infant seats . . . 137
LATCH system . . . 146

162.561.8U0.21

Lower anchorages 145
Safety instructions 135
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 137
Child seats 137
Securing 141
Cigarette lighter 53
Cleaning 168
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 170
Cleaning Alcantara 171
Cleaning artificial leather 171
Cleaning carbon parts 170, 171
Cleaning controls 170
Cleaning decorative parts and trim . . . 169, 170
Cleaning displays 170
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 169
Cleaning plastic parts 170
Cleaning textiles 171
Cleaning the rims 169
Climate control system 62
Climate control system (automatic)
Adjusting the temperature 65
Air distribution 65
Air vents 66
AUTO (automatic mode) 65
Blower 65
Changing the temperature unit 66
Defrosting the windshield 65
Operation 64
Rear window defogger 64, 66
Recirculation mode 65
Synchronizing 66
Climate control system (manual)
Adjusting the temperature 63
Air distribution, air vents 64
Blower 63
Defrosting the windows 64
Operation 63
Rear window defogger 64
Recirculation mode 63
Closing
Panorama roof 37
Closing/opening
by remote control 29
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
With the door lock 32
Cockpit (overview) 8
Coming home 41
Compartments 54, 56
Compass in the mirror 47
Compliance 235
Consumer information 232
Consumer Information 102
Consumption (fuel) 22
Contacting NHTSA 102
Convenience key
Indicator lights 71
Starting the engine 69
Stopping the engine 70
Switching the ignition on 69
unlocking/locking 30
Convenience opening/closing 37
Convertible child safety seats 138
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 143
Deactivating 144
Using to secure a child safety seat 143
Coolant system 183
Cooling mode (automatic climate control system) 65
Cooling mode (manual climate control system) 63
Cooling system
Coolant temperature 10
Indicator light 14
Cooling System
Expansion tank 183
Cornering lights 80
Crossing water 162
Cruise control system
Changing speed 75
Description 74
Preselecting speed 75
Switching off 75
switching on 74
Cup holders 54, 55
Current consumption 22

D

Data recorder 150
Date display 22
Daytime running lights 39

Declaration of compliance
Audi side assist 235
Cell phone package 235
Convenience key 235
Cruise control 235
Electronic immobilizer 235
Remote control key 235
Defective light bulb warning 18
Defrosting (windows)
Manual climate control system 64
Defrosting (windshield)
Automatic climate control system 65
DEF (instrument cluster) 23
Determining correct load limit 205
Digital compass 47
Dimensions 230
Distance 22
Doors
Child safety lock 35, 36
Emergency locking 32
Door, hood or luggage compartment lid warning 23
Driver information system 20
Efficiency program 23
On-board computer 22
Operating using multifunction steering wheel 21
Operating using windshield wiper lever ... 21
Overview 20
Service interval display 25
Driver seat
refer to Seating position 96
Drive select 80
Indicator light 18
Steering 80
Driving offroad 162
Driving safely 95
Driving through water 162
Driving time 22
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 62

E

Economical driving 160
Efficiency program 23
Fuel economy messages 24
Other equipment 24
Overview 23
Electromechanical parking brake
Warning/indicator lights 14
also refer to Parking brake 71
Electromechanical steering 156
Indicator light 156
Electronic differential lock
Warning/indicator lights 16
Electronic Differential Lock 151
Electronic immobilizer 32
Electronic power control
(EPC) warning/indicator light 17
Electronic stabilization control
ESC offroad mode 152
Hill descent assist 153
Electronic Stabilization Control 151
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
Warning/indicator lights 16
Emergency flasher 42
Warning/indicator lights 19
Emergency locking front passenger's door .. 32
Emergency operation
Emergency braking function 73
Front passenger's door 32
Fuel filler door 176
Luggage compartment lid 35
Panorama roof 38
Sun shade (roof) 38
Emergency release
Selector lever 86
Emergency starting 223
Energy management 157
Battery power 15
Driver notification 15
Engine
Coolant 183
Data 231
Starting with jumper cables 223
Starting (convenience key) 69
Starting (ignition lock) 67
Stopping (convenience key) 70
Stopping (ignition lock) 68

162.561.8U0.21

Engine compartment 179
Opening the hood 177
Overview 179
Safety instructions 177
Working the engine compartment 177
Engine coolant system 183
Adding coolant 184
Checking coolant level 183
Checking the engine coolant level 183
Radiator fan 185
Engine hood
Closing 177
Engine oil 179
Adding 181
Additives 181
Changing 182
Checking the oil level 181
Dipstick 181
Indicator light 17
Oil consumption 180
Oil grades 179
Pressure malfunction 15
Sensor defective 17
Specification and viscosity 179
Use 181
Engine speed limitation 17
Environment
Catalytic converter 159
Disposing of your vehicle battery 190
Driving at high speeds 161
Fuel 175
Leaks under your vehicle 177
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up . . . 161
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid . . . 186
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant 184
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 181, 182
Recycling used engine oil 181
Roof rack 57
Unleaded fuel 173
What should I do with an old battery? . . . 190
EPC
refer to Electronic power control 17
ESC
Automatic post-collision braking system . 152
ESC offroad mode 152
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 150
Expansion tank 183
Exterior lighting 39
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 43
Heating 43

F

Fan
Radiator 185
Fastening
Booster seats 140
Convertible child safety seats 138
Infant seats 137
Floor mats 100
Folding chocks 212
Folding the rear seats 59
Foot pedals 99
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 160
Gasoline fumes and the environment 175
Rear window defogger 64
Refueling 175
Front airbags
Description 116
How they work 120
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 105
Front seats
Adjusting 97
Child restraints in the front seat 113
also refer to Seats 49
Fuel
Additives 173
Blended gasoline 173
Current consumption 22
Filler neck 174
Fuel gauge 10, 11
Gasoline 173
Gasoline additives 174
Low fuel level symbol 17
Octane rating 173
Recommendation 173
Refueling 175
Saving fuel 160
Tank capacity 230
Tank system 17
Fuel economy messages (efficiency program) 24

Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release 176
Fuel gauge 11
Fuses
Assignment 220
Replacing 219

G

Garment hooks 56
Gas discharge lamps 221
Generator
Warning/indicator lights 15
Glossary of tire and loading terminology .. 193
Glove compartment 55
Cooling box 55
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 229
Ground clearance 162

H

Headlight
Headlight assist 40
Headlight range control system 39
Headlights
Cleaning 169
Defective 18
Headlight range control 18
Headlight range control system 39
Head restraints 98
adjusting 52
Adjusting 98
Front seats 51
removing and installing 52
Heated
Exterior mirrors 43
Rear window 64, 66
Washer nozzles 45
Heavy clothing and safety belts 106
High beam 40
High voltage warning label 229
Hill descent assist 153
Hill descent control 85
Hill holdH 73
Horn 8
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 144
How many airbags does my vehicle have? .. 118
How safety belt pretensioners work 110

I

Ignition
Indicator light 18
Switching on and off (convenience key) ... 69
Switching on and off (ignition lock) 67
Imbalance (wheels) 199
Important things to do before driving 95
Improperly worn safety belts 110
Indicator lights 11
Airbag system 122
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 122
Infant seats 137
Inflation pressure (tires) 201
Inspection interval 25
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 141
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 148
Instrument cluster 10
Indicator lights 11
Messages 11
Instruments 10
Adjusting the lighting 43
Interior lighting 42
Front and rear 42
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45

J

Jack 216
Jump-starting 223
Jumper cables 224

K

Key 28
Key not recognized 70
Replacement key 28
Replacing the battery 29
unlocking/locking 29, 30
Unlocking/locking 32
Kick-down
Automatic transmission 86

162.561.8U0.21

L

LATCH 144
Description 145
Installing a child restraint 146
Location 145
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 146
Leather care/cleaning 171
Leaving home 41
Light
Adjusting exterior lighting 41
Coming/Leaving home 41
Daytime running lights 39
Emergency flashers 42
Headlight assist 40
Interior/reading lights 42
Low beams 39
Parking lights 39
Rear fog lights 39
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 39
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45
Sensor defective 18
Lighting
Exterior 39
Interior 42
Lights
Headlight range control system 39
High beam 40
Turn signals 40
Loading the luggage compartment 100
Locking/unlocking
by remote control 29
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Low beams 39
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) 144
Luggage compartment 58
Cargo floor 61
Cargo net 60
Cover 58
Increasing the size 59
Reversible mat 60
Ski bag 60
Storing cargo correctly 100
Tie-downs 60
also refer to Loading the luggage compartment 100
Luggage compartment lid
Closing button 34
Emergency release 35
Opening/closing 33, 34
Lumbar support 50

M

Maintenance 232
Maintenance intervals 25
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 17, 25
Mirror
Dimming 44
Vanity mirror 44
Mirror compass 47
Mirrors
Exterior mirrors 43
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 122
Multifunction steering wheel 21

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 171
Net 56
NHTSA
Contacting 102
Number of seats 104

O

Occupant seating positions 96
Octane rating 173
Odometer 23
Oil
refer to Engine oil 179
Oil change interval 25
On-board computer 22
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 26
Electronic speed limiter 26
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Opening 27
Hood 177
Luggage compartment lid 34
Panorama roof 37

Opening/closing
by remote control 29
On the door lock 32
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
Other equipment (efficiency program) 24
Overview (Cockpit) 8
Owner's Literature 5

P

Paint damage 170
Paint No. 229
Panorama roof 37
Convenience opening/closing 37
Emergency closing 38
Parking aid
Cleaning the sensors/camera 169
Parking brake 71
Emergency braking function 73
Parking 72
Releasing/setting 71
Starting from a stop 72
Starting to drive with a trailer 73
also refer to Parking brake 71
Parking lights 39
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 93
Cleaning the rearview camera 90
Malfunction 93
Parking system plus 89
Trailer hitch 94
also refer to Parking systems 89, 90
Parking systems 88
Peripheral display 89
Rear parking system 88
Rearview camera 90
Parking (automatic transmission) 83
Parts replacement 234
Pass-through 60
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 122
Pedals 99
Peripheral display 89
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 105
Polishing 170
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 62
Pollutant filter 62
Power
seat adjustment 50
Windows 36
Power locking system
Selective unlock feature 31
Settings 31
Power windows
Convenience opening/closing 37
Malfunction 37
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 109
Pressure (tires) 209
Proper safety belt position 108
Proper seating position
Front passenger 97
Occupants 96
Rear passengers 98
Protecting 170
Protective liner 61

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 156
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 105

R

Radiator fan 185
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 39
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 45
Sensor defective 18
Raising the vehicle 227
Range (fuel level) 22
Reading lights 42
Rear fog lights 39
Rear lid
refer to Luggage compartment lid 33
Rear light
Defective 18
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 89, 90
Rearview mirror
Dimming 44

162.561.8U0.21

Rear window defogger 64, 66
Recirculation mode
Automatic climate control system 65
manual climate control system 63
Refueling 175
Remote control key 28
LED 29
Replacing the battery 29
Synchronization 29
unlocking/locking 29
Repair manuals 232
Repairs
Airbag system 125
Replacement key 28
Replacing
Light bulbs 221
Replacing windshield wiper blades 46
Replacing wiper blades 47
Reporting Safety Defects 102, 103
Reset button (trip odometer) 23
Resetting the trip odometer 23
Retract
New brake pads 154
Retractor 107
Reversible mat 60
Rims 205
Roof rack 57
Roof load 57
Roof weight 57

S

Safe driving habits 95
Safety
Airbag system 112
Belts 104
Cargo 100
Correct seating position 96
Pedal area 99
Safety belt position 108
Safety belt height adjustment 109
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 109
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 111
Safety belts 104, 107
Cleaning 170
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 105
Fastening 107
Height adjustment 109
Improperly worn 110
Not worn 105
Safety belt position 108
Safety instructions 106
Securing child safety seats 141
Special considerations for pregnant women 109
Unfastening 109
Warning/indicator light 104
Warning light 15
Worn properly 106
Safety compliance sticker 229
Safety equipment 95
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 95
Safety guidelines
Seat adjustment 49
Safety instructions
Engine compartment 177
for side curtain airbags 131
for using child safety seats 135
for using safety belts 106
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 124
Seat
Number of seats 104
Seat adjustment
Driver's seat 49
Front passenger's seat 50
Head restraints 98
Safety guidelines 49
Seat belts
refer to Safety belts 104
Seat heating
Automatic climate control system 65
Manual climate control system 63
Seat heating (automatic climate control system) 65
Seating capacity 104
Seating position
Driver 96
Front passenger 97

How to adjust the front seats 97
Incorrect seat position 99
Occupants 96
Rear passengers 98
Seats
adjusting 50
Cleaning 171
Correct seating position 96
Folding 59
Selective unlock feature 31
Selector lever lock 83
Selector lever positions 82
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency operation 86
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 111
Service interval display 25
Service position
refer to Replacing wiper blades 46
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 85
Shutting down vehicle 160
Side airbags
Description 126
How they work 127
Side assist 76
Adjusting the brightness 78
Cleaning the sensors 169
Sensor range 77
switching on and off 78
also refer to Side assist 76
Side curtain airbags 129
Description 129
How they work 130
Safety instructions 131
Ski bag 60
Snow chains 206
Sockets 53
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 149
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) 212
Spare tire 212
Spare wheel 212
Speed warning system 74
START ENGINE STOP button 69
Starting from a stop
Hill start assist 72
Starting on inclines (hill hold) 73
Starting to drive
With a trailer 73
Starting (engine) 67, 69
Steering
Electromechanical steering 156, 0
Indicator light 156
Locking (convenience key) 70
Locking (ignition lock) 68
also refer to Electromechanical steering . 156
Steering wheel
Adjusting steering column 67
Buttons 21
Indicator light 16
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . 85
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 205
Stopping (engine) 68, 70
Storage 54
Glove compartment 55
Storage compartments 54, 56
Subwoofer 212
Sunroof
refer to Panorama roof 37
Sun shade
Emergency closing (panorama roof) 38
Sun visors 44
Symbols
refer to Indicator lights 11

T

Tachometer 10, 11
Tail lights
Cleaning 169
Technical data 229
Technical modifications 234
Temperature display
Coolant 10
Tether anchors 147
Tether strap 147
Tie-down rings 101
Tie-downs 60
Time 22
tiptronic mode (automatic transmission) . . . 85
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 82

162.561.8U0.21

Tires 191
All wheel drive 156
Low aspect ratio tires 207
Replacing 213
Service life 199
Tire pressure 201, 210
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 208, 209
Tire pressure table 202
Tread wear indicators 199
Unidirectional 193
Uniform tire quality grading 207
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 193
Tires and vehicle load limits 203
Tool 211
Torn or frayed safety belts 106
Towing
Tow trucks 225
Towing loop 225, 226
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 209
Trailer mode 164
Notes 166
Trailer towing
Operating instructions 165
Parking system 94
Technical requirements 164, 165
Tongue load 165
Trailer turn signal assembly
Warning/indicator lights 19
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 86
Transport Canada 103
Trunk
refer to Luggage compartment 58
Turn signals 40
Warning/indicator lights 19

U

Unfastening safety belts 109
Uniform tire quality grading 207
Unlocking/locking
by remote control 29
On the door lock 32
with the central locking switch 31
with the convenience key 30
With the door lock 32
Use of jumper cables 224

V

Vanity mirror 44
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 168
Vehicle control modules 150
Vehicle electrical system 15
Vehicle identification label 229
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 229
Vehicle jack 211, 216
Vehicle shut-down 160
Vehicle tool kit 211

W

Warning/indicator lights
Airbag system 16
Brake system 13
Electromechanical parking brake 14
Electronic power control 17
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 16
Generator 15
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 17
Safety belt 15
Safety systems 16
Trailer turn signal assembly 19
Turn signals 19
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 11
Warranty coverages 232
Washing matte finish paint 168
Weights 229
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 108
What happens to unbelted occupants? 105
What impairs driving safety? 96
Wheel bolt caps
Removing 215
Wheel bolts 205
Loosening 215
Tightening 215
Wheel covers, removing 215
Wheels 191
Cleaning 169
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 193
Replacing 213
Tires and vehicle load limits 203

When must a safety belt be replaced? 106
When must the airbag system be inspected? 122
Where are lower anchorages located? 145
Window regulators 36
  Child safety lock 36
Windows
  Cleaning/removing ice 170
  Defrosting (manual climate control system) 64
Windshield
  cleaning 45
  Defrosting (automatic climate control system) 65
  Defrosting (manual climate control system) 64
Windshield washer fluid level 18
Windshield washer system 45, 190
Windshield wipers
  Cleaning wiper blades 46
  Folding up 46
  Replacing windshield wiper blades 46
  Replacing wiper blades 47
  Switching on and off 45
Winter driving
  Snow chains 206
  Tires 206
Winter operation
  Battery 187
  Coolant system 183
  Defrosting the windshield (automatic climate control system) 65
  Windshield washer system 190
Winter tires 206
Winter use
  Car washes 168
  Removing ice from windows 170

X

Xenon headlights 221

162.561.8U0.21

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Editorial deadline: 03/20/2015

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Printed in Germany

© 2015 AUDI AG

Owner's Manual
2016 Audi Q3
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2015
162.561.8U0.21

1625618U021

www.audi.com